

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
6 September 2002 (06.09.2002)

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/068058 A2

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: A61P 31/18, (74) Agents: KNOWLES, Sherry, M. et al.; King & Spalding,
A61K 45/06, 31/70 191 Peachtree Street, Atlanta, GA 30303-1763 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US01/48817

(81) Designated States (*national*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(22) International Filing Date:

12 December 2001 (12.12.2001)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data:

60/256,068 15 December 2000 (15.12.2000) US
60/272,605 1 March 2001 (01.03.2001) US

(84) Designated States (*regional*): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(71) Applicant (*for all designated States except US*): TRIANGLE PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 4 University Place, 4611 University Drive, Durham, NC 27707-4674 (US).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): FURMAN, Philip, A. [US/US]; 3815 Cottonwood Drive, Durham, NC 27705 (US). BORROTO-ESODA, Katyna [US/US]; 12408 Tapersfield Court, Raleigh, NC 27613 (US).

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

WO 02/068058 A2

(54) Title: DADP COMBINATION THERAPY WITH INOSINE MONOPHOSPHATE DEHYDROGENASE INHIBITOR

(57) Abstract: It has been unexpectedly found that a drug resistant strain of HIV exhibits the behavior of drug-naïve virus when given the combination of a β-D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside and an IMPDH inhibitor. In one nonlimiting embodiment, the HIV strain is resistant to a β-D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside.

**DADP COMBINATION THERAPY WITH INOSINE MONOPHOSPHATE
DEHYDROGENASE INHIBITOR**

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to pharmaceutical compositions and methods for the treatment or prophylaxis of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection in a host comprising administering such compositions. This application claims priority to U.S. provisional application 60/256,068 filed on December 15, 2000 and to U.S. provisional application 60/272,605 filed on March 1, 2001.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

AIDS, Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome, is a catastrophic disease that has reached global proportions. From July 1998 through June 1999 a total of 47,083 AIDS cases were reported in the US alone. With more than 2.2 million deaths in 1998, HIV/AIDS has now become the fourth leading cause of mortality and its impact is going to increase. The death toll due to AIDS has reached a record 2.6 million per year, while new HIV infections continued to spread at a growing rate, according to a recent UNAIDS report.

AIDS was first brought to the attention of the Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in 1981 when seemingly healthy homosexual men came down with Karposi's Sarcoma (KS) and Pneumocystis Carinii Pneumonia (PCP), two opportunistic diseases that were only known to inflict immuno-deficient patients. A couple of years later, the causitive agent of AIDS, a lymphadenopathy associated retrovirus, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) was isolated by the Pasteur Institute in Paris, and later confirmed by an independent source in the National Cancer Institute of the United States.

In 1986, at the second International Conference on AIDS in Paris, preliminary reports on the use of a drug against AIDS were presented. This drug, 3'-azido-3'-deoxy-

thymidine (AZT, Zidovudine, Retrovir), was approved by the Food And Drug Administration (FDA) and it became the first drug to be used in the fight against AIDS. Since the advent of AZT, several nucleoside analogs have been shown to have potent antiviral activity against the human immunodeficiency virus type I (HIV-I). In 5 particular, a number of 2',3'-dideoxy-2',3'-didehydro-nucleosides have been shown to have potent anti-HIV-1 activity. 2',3'-Dideoxy-2',3'-didehydro-thymidine ("D4T"; also referred to as 1-(2,3-dideoxy- β -D-glycero-pent-2-eno-furanosyl)thymine)) is currently sold for the treatment of HIV under the name Stavudine by Bristol Myers Squibb.

It has been recognized that drug-resistant variants of HIV can emerge after 10 prolonged treatment with an antiviral agent. Drug resistance most typically occurs by mutation of a gene that encodes for an enzyme used in viral replication, and most typically in the case of HIV, reverse transcriptase, protease or DNA polymerase. Recently, it has been demonstrated that the efficacy of a drug against HIV infection can be prolonged, augmented, or restored by administering the compound in combination or 15 alternation with a second, and perhaps third, antiviral compound that induces a different mutation from that caused by the principle drug. Alternatively, the pharmacokinetics, biodistribution or other parameter of the drug can be altered by such combination or alternation therapy. In general, combination therapy is typically preferred over alternation therapy because it induces multiple simultaneous pressures on the virus. One 20 cannot predict, however, what mutations will be induced in the HIV-1 genome by a given drug, whether the mutation is permanent or transient, or how an infected cell with a mutated HIV-1 sequence will respond to therapy with other agents in combination or alternation. This is exacerbated by the fact that there is a paucity of data on the kinetics of drug resistance in long-term cell cultures treated with modern antiretroviral agents.

HIV-1 variants resistant to 3'-azido-3'-deoxythymidine (AZT), 2',3'-dideoxyinosine (DDI) or 2',3'-dideoxycytidine (DDC) have been isolated from patients receiving long term monotherapy with these drugs (Larder BA, Darby G, Richman DD. 25 *Science* 1989;243:1731-4; St Clair MH, Martin JL, Tudor WG, et al. *Science* 1991;253:1557-9; St Clair MH, Martin JL, Tudor WG, et al. *Science* 1991;253:1557-9; 30 and Fitzgibbon JE, Howell RM, Haberzettl CA, Sperber SJ, Gocke DJ, Dubin DT. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1992;36:153-7). Mounting clinical evidence indicates that AZT resistance is a predictor of poor clinical outcome in both children and adults

(Mayers DL. Lecture at the Thirty-second Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy. (Anaheim, CA. 1992); Tudor-Williams G, St Clair MH, McKinney RE, *et al.* *Lancet* 1992;339:15-9; Ogino MT, Dankner WM, Spector SA. *J Pediatr* 1993;123:1-8; Crumpacker CS, D'Aquila RT, Johnson VA, *et al.* Third Workshop on Viral Resistance. (Gaithersburg, MD. 1993); and Mayers D, and the RV43 Study Group. Third Workshop on Viral Resistance. (Gaithersburg, MD. 1993)).

The rapid development of HIV-1 resistance to nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs) has also been reported both in cell culture and in human clinical trials (Nunberg JH, Schleif WA, Boots EJ, *et al.* *J Virol* 1991;65(9):4887-92; Richman D, Shih CK, Lowy I, *et al.* *Proc Natl Acad Sci* (USA) 1991;88 :11241-5; Mellors JW, Dutschman GE, Im GJ, Tramontano E, Winkler SR, Cheng YC. *Mol Pharm* 1992;41:446-51; Richman DD and the ACTG 164/168 Study Team. Second International HIV-1 Drug Resistance Workshop. (Noordwijk, the Netherlands. 1993); and Saag MS, Emini EA, Laskin OL, *et al.* *N Engl J Med* 1993;329:1065-1072). In the case of the NNRTI L'697,661, drug-resistant HIV-1 emerged within 2-6 weeks of initiating therapy in association with the return of viremia to pretreatment levels (Saag MS, Emini EA, Laskin OL, *et al.* *N Engl J Med* 1993;329:1065-1072). Breakthrough viremia associated with the appearance of drug-resistant strains has also been noted with other classes of HIV-1 inhibitors, including protease inhibitors (Jacobsen H, Craig CJ, Duncan IB, Haenggi M, Yasargil K, Mous J. Third Workshop on Viral Resistance. (Gaithersburg, MD. 1993)). This experience has led to the realization that the potential for HIV-1 drug resistance must be assessed early on in the preclinical evaluation of all new therapies for HIV-1.

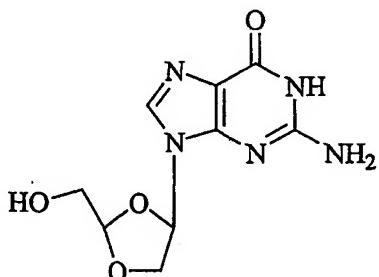
1,3-Dioxolanyl Nucleosides

The success of various synthetic nucleosides in inhibiting the replication of HIV *in vivo* or *in vitro* has led a number of researchers to design and test nucleosides that substitute a heteroatom for the carbon atom at the 3'-position of the nucleoside. Norbeck, et al., disclosed that (+/-)-1-[(2- β , 4- β)-2-(hydroxymethyl)-4-dioxolanyl]thymine (referred to as (+/-)-dioxolane-T) exhibits a modest activity against

HIV (EC₅₀ of 20 µM in ATH8 cells), and is not toxic to uninfected control cells at a concentration of 200 µM. Tetrahedron Letters 30 (46), 6246, (1989).

On April 11, 1988, Bernard Belleau, Dilip Dixit, and Nghe Nguyen-Ba at BioChem Pharma filed patent application U.S.S.N. 07/179,615 which disclosed a generic group of racemic 2-substituted-4-substituted-1,3-dioxolane nucleosides for the treatment of HIV. The '615 patent application matured into European Patent Publication No. 0 337 713; U.S. Patent No. 5,041,449; and U.S. Patent No. 5,270,315 assigned to BioChem Pharma, Inc.

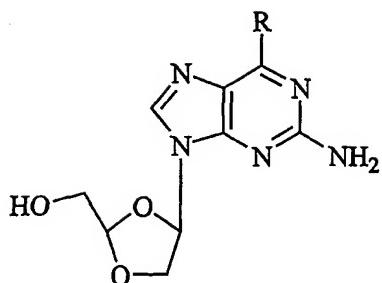
On December 5, 1990, Chung K. Chu and Raymond F. Schinazi filed U.S.S.N. 07/622,762, which disclosed an asymmetric process for the preparation of enantiomerically enriched β-D-1,3-dioxolane nucleosides via stereospecific synthesis, and certain nucleosides prepared thereby, including (-)-(2R,4R)-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]guanine (DXG), and its use to treat HIV. This patent application issued as U.S. Patent No. 5,179,104.



15

On May 21, 1991, Tarek Mansour, et al., at BioChem Pharma filed U.S.S.N. 07/703,379 directed to a method to obtain the enantiomers of 1,3-dioxolane nucleosides using a stereoselective synthesis that includes condensing a 1,3-dioxolane intermediate covalently bound to a chiral auxiliary with a silyl Lewis acid. The corresponding application was filed in Europe as EP 0 515 156.

On August 25, 1992, Chung K. Chu and Raymond F. Schinazi filed U.S.S.N. 07/935,515, disclosing certain enantiomerically enriched β-D-dioxolanyl purine compounds for the treatment of humans infected with HIV of the formula:



wherein R is OH, Cl, NH₂ or H, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or derivative of the compounds optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent. The compound wherein R is chloro is referred to as (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-6-chloro-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]purine. The compound wherein R is hydroxy is (-)-(2R,4R)-9-[(2-hydroxy-methyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]guanine. The compound wherein R is amino is (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]adenine. The compound wherein R is hydrogen is (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4yl]purine. This application issued as U.S. Patent Nos. 5,925,643 and 10 5,767,122.

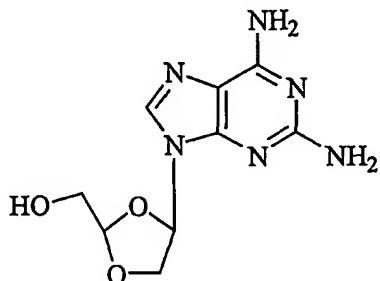
In 1992, Kim et al., published an article teaching how to obtain (-)-L-β-dioxolane-C and (+)-L-β-dioxolane-T from 1,6-anhydro-L-β-glucopyranose. Kim et al., *Potent anti-HIV and anti-HBV Activities of (-)-L-β-Dioxolane-C and (+)-L-β-Dioxolane-T and Their Asymmetric Syntheses*, *Tetrahedron Letters* Vol 32(46), pp 5899-6902.

15 On October 28, 1992, Raymond Schinazi filed U.S.S.N. 07/967,460 directed to the use of the compounds disclosed in U.S.S.N. 07/935,515 for the treatment of hepatitis B. This application has issued as U.S. Patent Nos. 5,444,063; 5,684,010; 5,834,474; and 5,830,898.

20 In 1993, Siddiqui, et al., at BioChem and Glaxo published that cis-2,6-diaminopurine dioxolane can be deaminated selectively using adenosine deaminase. Siddiqui, et al., *Antiviral Optically Pure dioxolane Purine Nucleoside Analogues, Bioorganic & Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, Vol. 3 (8), pp 1543-1546 (1993).

25 (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]adenine (DAPD) is a selective inhibitor of HIV-1 replication *in vitro* as a reverse transcriptase inhibitor (RTI). DAPD is thought to be deaminated *in vivo* by adenosine deaminase, a ubiquitous enzyme, to yield (-)-β-D-dioxolane guanine (DXG), which is subsequently converted to

the corresponding 5'-triphosphate (DXG-TP). Biochemical analysis has demonstrated that DXG-TP is a potent inhibitor of the HIV reverse transcriptase (HIV-RT) with a Ki of 0.019 μM.



5

DAPD

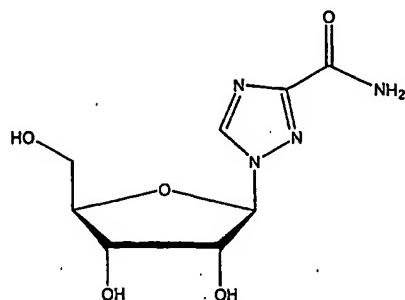
Triangle Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (Durham, N.C.) is currently developing this compound for the treatment of HIV and HBV under license agreement from Emory University in collaboration with Abbott Laboratories, Inc.

Ribavirin

10 Ribavirin (1-β-D-ribofuranosyl-1,2,4-triazole-3-carboxamide) is a synthetic, non-interferon-inducing, broad spectrum antiviral nucleoside analog sold under the trade name Virazole (The Merck Index, 11th edition, Editor: Budavari, S., Merck & Co., Inc., Rahway, NJ, p1304, 1989). U.S. Patent No. 3,798,209 and RE29,835 disclose and claim ribavirin. In the United States, ribavirin was first approved as an aerosol form for the treatment of a certain type of respiratory virus infection in children. Ribavirin is structurally similar to guanosine, and has *in vitro* activity against several DNA and RNA viruses including *Flaviviridae* (Gary L. Davis *Gastroenterology* 118:S104-S114, 2000).
15 Ribavirin reduces serum amino transferase levels to normal in 40% of patients, but it does not lower serum levels of HCV-RNA (Gary L. Davis *Gastroenterology* 118:S104-S114, 2000). Thus, ribavirin alone is not effective in reducing viral RNA levels. It is being studied in combination with DDI as an anti-HIV treatment. More recently, it has
20

been shown to exhibit activity against hepatitis A, B and C. Since the beginning of the AIDS crisis, people have used ribavirin as an anti-HIV treatment, however, when used as a monotherapy, several controlled studies have shown that ribavirin is not effective against HIV. It has no effect on T4 cells, T8 cells or p24 antigen.

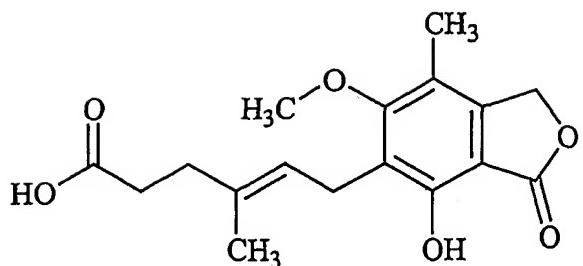
5 The combination of IFN and ribavirin for the treatment of HCV infection has been reported to be effective in the treatment of IFN naïve patients (Battaglia, A.M. et al., Ann. Pharmacother. 34:487-494, 2000). Results are promising for this combination treatment both before hepatitis develops or when histological disease is present (Berenguer, M. et al. Antivir. Ther. 3(Suppl. 3):125-136, 1998). Side effects of
10 combination therapy include hemolysis, flulike symptoms, anemia, and fatigue (Gary L. Davis. Gastroenterology 118:S104-S114, 2000).



RIBAVIRIN

Mycophenolic Acid

15 Mycophenolic acid (6-(4-hydroxy-6-methoxy-7-methyl-3-oxo-5-phthalanyl)-4-methyl-4-hexanoic acid) is known to reduce the rate of *de novo* synthesis of guanosine monophosphate by inhibition of inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase ("IMPDH"). It also reduces lymphocyte proliferation.



MYCOPHENOLIC ACID

Scientists have shown that mycophenolic acid has a synergistic effect when combined with Abacavir (Ziagen) *in vitro*. Mycophenolic acid depletes guanosine, one of the essential DNA building blocks. Abacavir is an analog of guanosine and as such, must compete with the body's natural production of guanosine in order to have a therapeutic effect. By depleting naturally occurring guanosine, mycophenolic acid improves Abacavir's uptake by the cell. Scientists have determined that the combination of mycophenolic acid and Abacavir is highly active against Abacavir-resistant virus.

However, notably the combination of mycophenolic acid and zidovudine or stavudine was antagonistic, likely due to the inhibition of thymidine phosphorylation by mycophenolic acid. 39th Interscience Conference on Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy, San Francisco, California, September 26-29, 1999. Heredia, A., Margolis, D.M., Oldach, D., Hazen, R., Redfield, R.R. (1999) *Abacavir in combination with the IMPDH inhibitor mycophenolic acid, is active against multi-drug resistant HIV*. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr.*; 22:406-7. Margolis, D.M., Heredia, A., Gaywee, J., Oldach, D., Drusano, G., Redfield, R.R. (1999) *Abacavir and mycophenolic acid, an inhibitor of inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase, have profound and synergistic anti-HIV activity*. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr.*, 21:362-370.

U.S. Patent No. 4,686,234 describes various derivatives of mycophenolic acid, its synthesis and uses in the treatment of autoimmune disorders, psoriasis, and inflammatory diseases, including, in particular, rheumatoid arthritis, tumors, viruses, and for the treatment of allograft rejection.

On May 5, 1995, Morris et al., in U.S. Patent No. 5,665,728, disclosed a method of preventing or treating hyperproliferative vascular disease in a mammal by administering an antiproliferative effective amount of rapamycin alone or in combination with mycophenolic acid.

In light of the global threat of the HIV epidemic, it is an object of the present invention to provide new methods and compositions for the treatment of HIV.

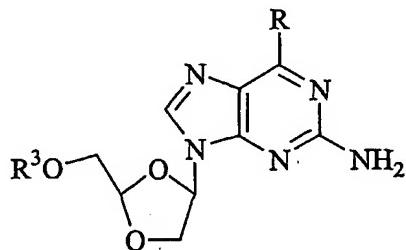
It is another object of the present invention to provide methods and compositions to treat drug resistant strains of HIV.

5

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

It has been unexpectedly found that a drug resistant strain of HIV exhibits the behavior of drug-naïve virus when given the combination of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside and an IMPDH inhibitor. In one nonlimiting embodiment, the HIV strain is resistant to a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside.

10 The present invention, therefore, is directed to compositions and methods for the treatment or prophylaxis of HIV, and in particular to a drug-resistant strain of HIV, including but not limited to a DAPD and/or DXG resistant strain of HIV, in an infected host, and in particular a human, comprising administering an effective amount of a β -D-dioxolanyl purine 1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside (“ β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleosides”) of the
15 formula:



wherein R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety, including a phospholipid, or an ether-lipid, or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent, in combination or alternation with an inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitor.
20

In one embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor, for example ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1- β -D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR), or (S)-5-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497), which effectively decreases the EC₅₀ for DXG when tested against wild type or mutant strains of HIV-1.

In one embodiment, the IMPDH inhibitor is mycophenolic acid. In another preferred embodiment of the invention, the IMPDH inhibitor is ribavirin. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is administered in combination with the IMPDH inhibitor. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is DAPD.

In another embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with a compound that reduces the rate of *de novo* synthesis of guanosine or deoxyguanosine nucleotides.

In a preferred embodiment, DAPD is administered in combination or alternation with ribavirin or mycophenolic acid which reduces the rate of *de novo* synthesis of guanosine nucleotides.

In yet another embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with a compound that effectively increases the intracellular concentration of DXG-TP.

In yet another preferred embodiment, DAPD is administered in combination or alternation with ribavirin or mycophenolic acid that effectively increases the intracellular concentration of DXG-TP.

It has also been discovered that, for example, this drug combination can be used to treat DAPD-resistant and DXG-resistant strains of HIV. DAPD and DXG resistant strains of HIV, after treatment with the disclosed drug combination, exhibit characteristics of drug-naïve virus.

Therefore, in yet another embodiment of the present invention, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is

administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor that effectively reverses drug resistance observed in HIV-1 mutant strains.

In yet another embodiment of the present invention, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor that effectively reverses DAPD or DXG drug resistance observed in HIV-1 mutant strains.

In general, during alternation therapy, an effective dosage of each agent is administered serially, whereas in combination therapy, effective dosages of two or more agents are administered together. The dosages will depend on such factors as absorption, bio-distribution, metabolism and excretion rates for each drug as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. It is to be noted that dosage values will also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens and schedules should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions. Examples of suitable dosage ranges can be found in the scientific literature and in the *Physicians Desk Reference*. Many examples of suitable dosage ranges for other compounds described herein are also found in public literature or can be identified using known procedures. These dosage ranges can be modified as desired to achieve a desired result.

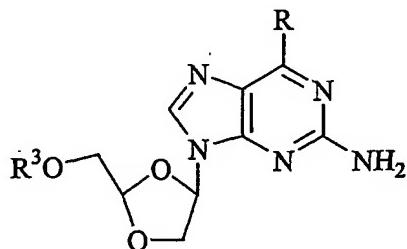
The disclosed combination and alternation regiments are useful in the prevention and treatment of HIV infections and other related conditions such as AIDS-related complex (ARC), persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL), AIDS-related neurological conditions, anti-HIV antibody positive and HIV-positive conditions, Kaposi's sarcoma, thrombocytopenia purpurea and opportunistic infections. In addition, these compounds or formulations can be used prophylactically to prevent or retard the progression of clinical illness in individuals who are anti-HIV antibody or HIV-antigen positive or who have been exposed to HIV.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

It has been unexpectedly found that a drug resistant strain of HIV exhibits the behavior of drug-naïve virus when given the combination of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside and an IMPDH inhibitor. In one nonlimiting embodiment, the HIV strain is 5 resistant to a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside.

IMPDH catalyzes the NAD-dependent oxidation of inosine-5'-monophosphate (IMP) to xanthosine-5'-monophosphate (XMP), which is a necessary step in guanosine nucleotide synthesis. It has been discovered that reduction of intracellular deoxyguanosine 5'-triphosphate (dGTP) levels through inhibition of inosine monophosphate 10 dehydrogenase (IMPDH) effectively increases the intracellular concentration of DXG-TP thereby augmenting inhibition HIV replication. This alone, however, cannot explain the unexpected sensitivity of a drug resistant form of HIV to a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside administered in the presence of an IMPDH inhibitor.

Therefore, the present invention is directed to compositions and methods for the 15 treatment or prophylaxis of HIV, and in particular to drug-resistant strains of HIV, such as DAPD and/or DXG resistant strains of HIV, in a host, for example a mammal, and in particular a human, comprising administering an effective amount of an enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:



20 wherein R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety, including a phospholipid, or an ether-lipid or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent, in combination or alternation with an 25 inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitor.

In one embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor, for example ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1- β -D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR), or (S)-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497), which effectively decreases the EC₅₀ for DXG when tested against wild type or mutant strains of HIV-1.

5 In a preferred embodiment, the IMPDH inhibitor is mycophenolic acid. In another preferred embodiment of the invention, the IMPDH inhibitor is ribavirin. In a
10 preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is administered in combination with the IMPDH inhibitor. In another preferred embodiment, the nucleoside is DAPD.

In another embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with a compound that reduces the rate of *de novo* synthesis of guanosine and deoxyguanosine nucleotides.

15 In a preferred embodiment, DAPD is administered in combination or alternation with ribavirin or mycophenolic acid which reduces the rate of *de novo* synthesis of guanosine nucleotides.

20 In yet another embodiment, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with a compound that effectively increases the intracellular concentration of DXG-TP.

In yet another preferred embodiment, DAPD is administered in combination or alternation with ribavirin or mycophenolic acid that effectively increases the intracellular concentration of DXG-TP.

25 It has also been discovered that, for example, this drug combination can be used to treat DAPD-resistant and DXG-resistant strains of HIV. DAPD and DXG resistant strains of HIV, after treatment with the disclosed drug combination, exhibit characteristics of drug-naïve virus.

Therefore, in yet another embodiment of the present invention, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is

administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor that effectively reverses drug resistance observed in HIV-1 mutant strains.

In yet another embodiment of the present invention, the enantiomerically enriched β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine, and in particular DAPD, is administered in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor that effectively reverses DAPD or DXG drug resistance observed in HIV-1 mutant strains.

I. Definitions

The term "protected" as used herein and unless otherwise defined refers to a group that is added to an oxygen, nitrogen, or phosphorus atom to prevent its further reaction or for other purposes. A wide variety of oxygen and nitrogen protecting groups are known to those skilled in the art of organic synthesis.

The term halo, as used herein, includes chloro, bromo, iodo and fluoro.

The term alkyl, as used herein, unless otherwise specified, refers to a saturated straight, branched, or cyclic, primary, secondary or tertiary hydrocarbon of typically C₁ to C₁₀, and specifically includes methyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, cyclopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, *t*-butyl, pentyl, cyclopentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, isoheptyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexylmethyl, 3-methylpentyl, 2,2-dimethylbutyl, and 2,3-dimethylbutyl. The term includes both substituted and unsubstituted alkyl groups. Moieties with which the alkyl group can be substituted are selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, sulfate, phosphonic acid, phosphate, or phosphonate, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991, hereby incorporated by reference.

The term lower alkyl, as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to a C₁ to C₄ saturated straight, branched, or if appropriate, a cyclic (for example, cyclopropyl) alkyl group, including both substituted and unsubstituted forms. Unless otherwise specifically stated in this application, when alkyl is a suitable moiety, lower

alkyl is preferred. Similarly, when alkyl or lower alkyl is a suitable moiety, unsubstituted alkyl or lower alkyl is preferred.

The term aryl, as used herein, and unless otherwise specified, refers to phenyl, biphenyl, or naphthyl, and preferably phenyl. The term includes both substituted and unsubstituted moieties. The aryl group can be substituted with one or more moieties selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, amino, alkylamino, arylamino, alkoxy, aryloxy, nitro, cyano, sulfonic acid, sulfate, phosphonic acid, phosphate, or phosphonate, either unprotected, or protected as necessary, as known to those skilled in the art, for example, as taught in Greene, *et al.*, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley and Sons, Second Edition, 1991.

The term acyl refers to a carboxylic acid ester in which the non-carbonyl moiety of the ester group is selected from straight, branched, or cyclic alkyl or lower alkyl, alkoxyalkyl including methoxymethyl, aralkyl including benzyl, aryloxyalkyl such as phenoxyethyl, aryl including phenyl optionally substituted with halogen (e.g., F, Cl, Br or I), C₁ to C₄ alkyl or C₁ to C₄ alkoxy, sulfonate esters such as alkyl or aralkyl sulphonyl including methanesulfonyl, the mono, di or triphosphate ester, trityl or monomethoxytrityl, substituted benzyl, trialkylsilyl (e.g. dimethyl-t-butylsilyl) or diphenylmethysilyl. Aryl groups in the esters optimally comprise a phenyl group. The term “lower acyl” refers to an acyl group in which the non-carbonyl moiety is lower alkyl.

The term “enantiomerically enriched” is used throughout the specification to describe a compound which includes approximately 95% or greater, preferably at least 96%, more preferably at least 97%, even more preferably, at least 98%, and even more preferably at least about 99% or more of a single enantiomer of that compound. When a nucleoside of a particular configuration (D or L) is referred to in this specification, it is presumed that the nucleoside is an enantiomerically enriched nucleoside, unless otherwise stated.

The term “host,” as used herein, refers to a unicellular or multicellular organism in which the virus can replicate, including cell lines and animals, and preferably a human. Alternatively, the host can be carrying a part of the viral genome, whose replication or function can be altered by the compounds of the present invention. The

term host specifically refers to infected cells, cells transfected with all or part of the viral genome and animals, in particular, primates (including chimpanzees) and humans. In most animal applications of the present invention, the host is a human patient. Veterinary applications, in certain indications, however, are clearly anticipated by the present invention (such as simian immunodeficiency virus in chimpanzees).

5 Pharmaceutically acceptable prodrugs refer to a compound that is metabolized, for example hydrolyzed or oxidized, in the host to form the compound of the present invention. Typical examples of prodrugs include compounds that have biologically labile protecting groups on a functional moiety of the active compound. Prodrugs 10 include compounds that can be oxidized, reduced, aminated, deaminated, hydroxylated, dehydroxylated, hydrolyzed, dehydrolyzed, alkylated, dealkylated, acylated, deacylated, phosphorylated, dephosphorylated to produce the active compound. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include those derived from pharmaceutically acceptable inorganic or organic bases and acids. Suitable salts include those derived from alkali metals such as 15 potassium and sodium, alkaline earth metals such as calcium and magnesium, among numerous other acids well known in the pharmaceutical art. The compounds of this invention either possess antiviral activity, or are metabolized to a compound that exhibits such activity.

II. Pharmaceutically Acceptable Salts and Prodrugs

20 In cases where any of the compounds as disclosed herein are sufficiently basic or acidic to form stable nontoxic acid or base salts, administration of the compound as a pharmaceutically acceptable salt may be appropriate. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable salts are organic acid addition salts formed with acids, which form a physiological acceptable anion, for example, tosylate, methanesulfonate, acetate, citrate, 25 malonate, tartarate, succinate, benzoate, ascorbate, α -ketoglutarate and α -glycerophosphate. Suitable inorganic salts may also be formed, including, sulfate, nitrate, bicarbonate and carbonate salts.

Pharmaceutically acceptable salts may be obtained using standard procedures well known in the art, for example by reacting a sufficiently basic compound such as an

amine with a suitable acid affording a physiologically acceptable anion. Alkali metal (for example, sodium, potassium or lithium) or alkaline earth metal (for example calcium) salts of carboxylic acids can also be made.

Any of the nucleosides described herein can be administered as a nucleotide prodrug to increase the activity, bioavailability, stability or otherwise alter the properties of the nucleoside. A number of nucleotide prodrug ligands are known. In general, alkylation, acylation or other lipophilic modification of the hydroxyl group of the compound or of the mono, di or triphosphate of the nucleoside will increase the stability of the nucleotide. Examples of substituent groups that can replace one or more hydrogens on the phosphate moiety are alkyl, aryl, steroids, carbohydrates, including sugars, 1,2-diacylglycerol and alcohols. Many are described in R. Jones and N. Bischofberger, *Antiviral Research*, 27 (1995) 1-17. Any of these can be used in combination with the disclosed nucleosides to achieve a desired effect.

Any of the compounds which are described herein for use in combination or alternation therapy can be administered as an acylated prodrug, wherein the term acyl refers to a carboxylic acid ester in which the non-carbonyl moiety of the ester group is selected from straight, branched, or cyclic alkyl or lower alkyl, alkoxyalkyl including methoxymethyl, aralkyl including benzyl, aryloxyalkyl such as phenoxyethyl, aryl including phenyl optionally substituted with halogen, C₁ to C₄ alkyl or C₁ to C₄ alkoxy, sulfonate esters such as alkyl or aralkyl sulphonyl including methanesulfonyl, the mono, di or triphosphate ester, trityl or monomethoxytrityl, substituted benzyl, trialkylsilyl (e.g. dimethyl-t-butylsilyl).

The active nucleoside or other hydroxyl containing compound can also be provided as an ether lipid (and particularly a 5'-ether lipid or a 5'-phosphoether lipid for a nucleoside), as disclosed in the following references, which are incorporated by reference herein: Kucera, L.S., N. Iyer, E. Leake, A. Raben, Modest E.K., D.L.W., and C. Piantadosi. 1990. "Novel membrane-interactive ether lipid analogs that inhibit infectious HIV-1 production and induce defective virus formation." *AIDS Res. Hum. Retro Viruses*. 6:491-501; Piantadosi, C., J. Marasco C.J., S.L. Morris-Natschke, K.L. Meyer, F. Gumus, J.R. Surles, K.S. Ishaq, L.S. Kucera, N. Iyer, C.A. Wallen, S. Piantadosi, and E.J. Modest. 1991. "Synthesis and evaluation of novel ether lipid nucleoside conjugates for anti-HIV activity." *J. Med. Chem.* 34:1408-1414; Hosteller,

K.Y., D.D. Richman, D.A. Carson, L.M. Stuhmiller, G.M. T. van Wijk, and H. van den Bosch. 1992. "Greatly enhanced inhibition of human immunodeficiency virus type 1 replication in CEM and HT4-6C cells by 3'-deoxythymidine diphosphate dimyristoylglycerol, a lipid prodrug of 3'-deoxythymidine." *Antimicrob. Agents Chemother.* 36:2025-2029; Hostetler, K.Y., L.M. Stuhmiller, H.B. Lenting, H. van den Bosch, and D.D. Richman, 1990. "Synthesis and antiretroviral activity of phospholipid analogs of azidothymidine and other antiviral nucleosides." *J. Biol. Chem.* 265:61127.

Nonlimiting examples of U.S. patents that disclose suitable lipophilic substituents that can be covalently incorporated into the nucleoside or other hydroxyl or amine containing compound, preferably at the 5'-OH position of the nucleoside or lipophilic preparations, include U.S. Patent Nos. 5,149,794 (Sep. 22, 1992, Yatvin et al.); 5,194,654 (Mar. 16, 1993, Hostetler et al., 5,223,263 (June 29, 1993, Hostetler et al.); 5,256,641 (Oct. 26, 1993, Yatvin et al.); 5,411,947 (May 2, 1995, Hostetler et al.); 5,463,092 (Oct. 31, 1995, Hostetler et al.); 5,543,389 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); 5,543,390 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); 5,543,391 (Aug. 6, 1996, Yatvin et al.); and 5,554,728 (Sep. 10, 1996; Basava et al.), all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Foreign patent applications that disclose lipophilic substituents that can be attached to the nucleosides of the present invention, or lipophilic preparations, include WO 89/02733, WO 90/00555, WO 91/16920, WO 91/18914, WO 93/00910, WO 94/26273, WO 96/15132, EP 0 350 287, EP 93917054.4, and WO 91/19721.

Nonlimiting examples of nucleotide prodrugs are described in the following references: Ho, D.H.W. (1973) "Distribution of Kinase and deaminase of 1 β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine in tissues of man and mouse." *Cancer Res.* 33, 2816-2820; Holy, A. (1993) Isopolar phosphorous-modified nucleotide analogues," In: De Clercq (Ed.), Advances in Antiviral Drug Design, Vol. I, JAI Press, pp. 179-231; Hong, C.I., Nechaev, A., and West, C.R. (1979a) "Synthesis and antitumor activity of 1- β -D-arabino-furanosylcytosine conjugates of cortisol and cortisone." *Biochem. Biophys. Rs. Commun.* 88, 1223-1229; Hong, C.I., Nechaev, A., Kirisits, A.J. Buchheit, D.J. and West, C.R. (1980) "Nucleoside conjugates as potential antitumor agents. 3. Synthesis and antitumor activity of 1-(β -D-arabinofuranosyl) cytosine conjugates of corticosteroids and selected lipophilic alcohols." *J. Med. Chem.* 28, 171-177; Hosteller, K.Y., Stuhmiller, L.M., Lenting, H.B.M. van den Bosch, H. and Richman *J. Biol. Chem.* 265,

6112-6117; Hosteller, K.Y., Carson, D.A. and Richman, D.D. (1991); "Phosphatidylazidothymidine: mechanism of antiretroviral action in CEM cells." *J. Biol Chem.* **266**, 11714-11717; Hosteller, K.Y., Korba, B. Sridhar, C., Gardener, M. (1994a) "Antiviral activity of phosphatidyl-dideoxycytidine in hepatitis B-infected cells and enhanced hepatic uptake in mice." *Antiviral Res.* **24**, 59-67; Hosteller, K.Y., Richman, D.D., Sridhar, C.N. Felgner, P.L. Felgner, J., Ricci, J., Gardener, M.F. Selleseth, D.W. and Ellis, M.N. (1994b) "Phosphatidylazidothymidine and phosphatidyl-ddC: Assessment of uptake in mouse lymphoid tissues and antiviral activities in human immunodeficiency virus-infected cells and in rauscher leukemia virus-infected mice." *Antimicrobial Agents Chemother.* **38**, 2792-2797; Hunston, R.N., Jones, A.A. McGuigan, C., Walker, R.T., Balzarini, J., and DeClercq, E. (1984) "Synthesis and biological properties of some cyclic phosphotriesters derived from 2'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine." *J. Med. Chem.* **27**, 440-444; Ji, Y.H., Moog, C., Schmitt, G., Bischoff, P. and Luu, B. (1990); "Monophosphoric acid esters of 7- β -hydroxycholesterol and of pyrimidine nucleoside as potential antitumor agents: synthesis and preliminary evaluation of antitumor activity." *J. Med. Chem.* **33** 2264-2270; Jones, A.S., McGuigan, C., Walker, R.T., Balzarini, J. and DeClercq, E. (1984) "Synthesis, properties, and biological activity of some nucleoside cyclic phosphoramidates." *J. Chem. Soc. Perkin Trans. I*, 1471-1474; Juodka, B.A. and Smrt, J. (1974) "Synthesis of diribonucleoside phosph (P \rightarrow N) amino acid derivatives." *Coll. Czech. Chem. Comm.* **39**, 363-968; Kataoka, S., Imai, J., Yamaji, N., Kato, M., Saito, M., Kawada, T. and Imai, S. (1989) "Alkylated cAMP derivatives; selective synthesis and biological activities." *Nucleic Acids Res. Sym. Ser.* **21**, 1-2; Kataoka, S., Uchida, "(cAMP) benzyl and methyl triesters." *Heterocycles* **32**, 1351-1356; Kinchington, D., Harvey, J.J., O'Connor, T.J., Jones, B.C.N.M., Devine, K.G., Taylor-Robinson D., Jeffries, D.J. and McGuigan, C. (1992) "Comparison of antiviral effects of zidovudine phosphoramidate and phosphorodiamidate derivatives against HIV and ULV *in vitro*." *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* **3**, 107-112; Kodama, K., Morozumi, M., Saithoh, K.I., Kuninaka, H., Yosino, H. and Saneyoshi, M. (1989) "Antitumor activity and pharmacology of 1- β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine -5'-stearylphosphate; an orally active derivative of 1- β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine." *Jpn. J. Cancer Res.* **80**, 679-685; Korty, M. and Engels, J. (1979) "The effects of adenosine- and guanosine 3',5' phosphoric acid benzyl esters on guinea-pig ventricular myocardium." *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*

310, 103-111; Kumar, A., Goe, P.L., Jones, A.S. Walker, R.T. Balzarini, J. and DeClercq, E. (1990) "Synthesis and biological evaluation of some cyclic phosphoramidate nucleoside derivatives." *J. Med. Chem.*, 33, 2368-2375; LeBec, C., and Huynh-Dinh, T. (1991) "Synthesis of lipophilic phosphate triester derivatives of 5-fluorouridine an arabinocytidine as anticancer prodrugs." *Tetrahedron Lett.* 32, 6553-6556; Lichtenstein, J., Barner, H.D. and Cohen, S.S. (1960) "The metabolism of exogenously supplied nucleotides by *Escherichia coli.*" *J. Biol. Chem.* 235, 457-465; Lucthy, J., Von Daeniken, A., Friederich, J. Manthey, B., Zweifel, J., Schlatter, C. and Benn, M.H. (1981) "Synthesis and toxicological properties of three naturally occurring cyanoepithioalkanes". *Mitt. Geg. Lebensmittelunters. Hyg.* 72, 131-133 (*Chem. Abstr.* 95, 127093); McGuigan, C. Tollerfield, S.M. and Riley, P.a. (1989) "Synthesis and biological evaluation of some phosphate triester derivatives of the anti-viral drug Ara." *Nucleic Acids Res.* 17, 6065-6075; McGuigan, C., Devine, K.G., O'Connor, T.J., Galpin, S.A., Jeffries, D.J. and Kinchington, D. (1990a) "Synthesis and evaluation of some novel phosphoramidate derivatives of 3'-azido-3'-deoxythymidine (AZT) as anti-HIV compounds." *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* 1 107-113; McGuigan, C., O'Connor, T.J., Nicholls, S.R. Nickson, C. and Kinchington, D. (1990b) "Synthesis and anti-HIV activity of some novel substituted dialkyl phosphate derivatives of AZT and ddCyd." *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* 1, 355-360; McGuigan, C., Nicholls, S.R., O'Connor, T.J., and Kinchington, D. (1990c) "Synthesis of some novel dialkyl phosphate derivative of 3'-modified nucleosides as potential anti-AIDS drugs." *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* 1, 25-33; McGuigan, C., Devin, K.G., O'Connor, T.J., and Kinchington, D. (1991) "Synthesis and anti-HIV activity of some haloalkyl phosphoramidate derivatives of 3'-azido-3' deoxythymidine (AZT); potent activity of the trichloroethyl methoxylaninyl compound." *Antiviral Res.* 15, 255-263; McGuigan, C., Pathirana, R.N., Balzarini, J. and DeClercq, E. (1993b) "Intracellular delivery of bioactive AZT nucleotides by aryl phosphate derivatives of AZT." *J. Med. Chem.* 36, 1048-1052.

Alkyl hydrogen phosphate derivatives of the anti-HIV agent AZT may be less toxic than the parent nucleoside analogue. *Antiviral Chem. Chemother.* 5, 271-277; Meyer, R. B., Jr., Shuman, D.A. and Robins, R.K. (1973) "Synthesis of purine nucleoside 3', 5'-cyclic phosphoramidates." *Tetrahedron Lett.* 269-272; Nagyvary, J. Gohil, R.N., Kirchner, C.R. and Stevens, J.D. (1973) "Studies on neutral esters of cyclic

AMP," *BioChem. Biophys. Res. Commun.* 55, 1072-1077; Namane, A. Gouyette, C., Fillion, M.P., Fillion, G. and Huynh-Dinh, T. (1992) "Improved brain delivery of AZT using a glycosyl phosphotriester prodrug." *J. Med. Chem.* 35, 3039-3044; Nargeot, J. Nerbonne, J.M. Engels, J. and Leser, H.A. (1983) *Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 80, 2395-2399;

5 Nelson, K.A., Bentruide, W.G. Stser, W.N. and Hutchinson, J.P. (1987) "The question of chair-twist equilibria for the phosphate rings of nucleoside cyclic 3', 5' monophosphates. ¹HNMR and x-ray crystallographic study of the diastereomers of thymidine phenyl cyclic 3', 5'-monophosphate." *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 109, 4058-4064; Nerbonne, J.M., Richard, S., Nargeot, J. and Lester, H.A. (1984) "New photoactivatable cyclic

10 nucleotides produce intracellular jumps in cyclic AMP and cyclic GMP concentrations." *Nature* 301, 74-76; Neumann, J.M., Herv^u, M., Debouzy, J.C., Guerra, F.I., Gouyette, C., Dupraz, B. and Huynh-Dinh, T. (1989) "Synthesis and transmembrane transport studies by NMR of a glycosyl phospholipid of thymidine." *J. Am. Chem. Soc.* 111, 4270-4277; Ohno, R., Tatsumi, N., Hirano, M., Imai, K. Mizoguchi, H., Nakamura, T.,

15 Kosaka, M., Takatuski, K., Yamaya, T., Toyama K., Yoshida, T., Masaoka, T., Hashimoto, S., Ohshima, T., Kimura, I., Yamada, K. and Kimura, J. (1991) "Treatment of myelodysplastic syndromes with orally administered 1-β-D-arabinouranosylcytosine - 5' stearylphosphate." *Oncology* 48, 451-455. Palomino, E., Kessele, D. and Horwitz, J.P. (1989) "A dihydropyridine carrier system for sustained delivery of 2', 3'

20 dideoxynucleosides to the brain." *J. Med. Chem.* 32, 22-625; Perkins, R.M., Barney, S. Wittrock, R., Clark, P.H., Levin, R. Lambert, D.M., Petteway, S.R., Serafinowska, H.T., Bailey, S.M., Jackson, S., Harnden, M.R. Ashton, R., Sutton, D., Harvey, J.J. and Brown, A.G. (1993) "Activity of BRL47923 and its oral prodrug, SB203657A against a rauscher murine leukemia virus infection in mice." *Antiviral Res.* 20 (Suppl. I). 84; Piantadosi, C., Marasco, C.J., Jr., Norris-Natschke, S.L., Meyer, K.L., Gumus, F., Surles, J.R., Ishaq, K.S., Kucera, L.S. Iyer, N., Wallen, C.A., Piantadosi, S. and Modest, E.J. (1991) "Synthesis and evaluation of novel ether lipid nucleoside conjugates for anti-HIV-1 activity." *J. Med. Chem.* 34, 1408-1414; Pompon, A., Lefebvre, I., Imbach, J.L., Kahn, S. and Farquhar, D. (1994). "Decomposition pathways of the mono- and

25 bis(pivaloyloxymethyl) esters of azidothymidine-5'-monophosphate in cell extract and in tissue culture medium; an application of the 'on-line ISRP-cleaning HPLC technique.'" *Antiviral Chem Chemother.* 5, 91-98; Postmark, T. (1974) "Cyclic AMP and cyclic GMP." *Annu. Rev. Pharmacol.* 14, 23-33; Prisbe, E.J., Martin, J.C.M., McGhee, D.P.C.,

Barker, M.F., Smee, D.F. Duke, A.E., Matthews, T.R. and Verheyden, J.P.J. (1986) "Synthesis and antiherpes virus activity of phosphate an phosphonate derivatives of 9-[¹(1, 3-dihydroxy-2-propoxy)methyl] guanine." *J. Med. Chem.* 29, 671-675; Pucch, F., Gosselin, G., Lefebvre, I., Pompon, a., Aubertin, A.M. Dirn, and Imbach, J.L. (1993) 5 "Intracellular delivery of nucleoside monophosphate through a reductase-mediated activation process." *Antiviral Res.* 22, 155-174; Pugaeva, V.P., Klochkeva, S.I., Mashbits, F.D. and Eizengart, R.S. (1969). "Toxicological assessment and health standard ratings for ethylene sulfide in the industrial atmosphere." *Gig. Trf. Prof. Zabol.* 14, 47-48 (*Chem. Abstr.* 72, 212); Robins, R.K. (1984) "The potential of nucleotide 10 analogs as inhibitors of Retro viruses and tumors." *Pharm. Res.* 11-18; Rosowsky, A., Kim, S.H., Ross and J. Wick, M.M. (1982) "Lipophilic 5'-(alkylphosphate) esters of 1- β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine and its N⁴-acyl and 2,2'-anhydro-3'-O-acyl derivatives as potential prodrugs." *J. Med. Chem.* 25, 171-178; Ross, W. (1961) "Increased sensitivity 15 of the walker turnout towards aromatic nitrogen mustards carrying basic side chains following glucose pretreatment." *BioChem. Pharm.* 8, 235-240; Ryu, E.K., Ross, R.J. Matsushita, T., MacCoss, M., Hong, C.I. and West, C.R. (1982). "Phospholipid-nucleoside conjugates. 3. Synthesis and preliminary biological evaluation of 1- β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine 5' diphosphate [-], 2-diacylglycerols." *J. Med. Chem.* 25, 1322-1329; Saffhill, R. and Hume, W.J. (1986) "The degradation of 5-iododeoxyuridine 20 and 5-bromoethoxyuridine by serum from different sources and its consequences for the use of these compounds for incorporation into DNA." *Chem. Biol. Interact.* 57, 347-355; Saneyoshi, M., Morozumi, M., Kodama, K., Machida, J., Kuninaka, A. and Yoshino, H. (1980) "Synthetic nucleosides and nucleotides. XVI. Synthesis and 25 biological evaluations of a series of 1- β -D-arabinofuranosylcytosine 5'-alkyl or arylphosphates." *Chem Pharm. Bull.* 28, 2915-2923; Sastry, J.K., Nehete, P.N., Khan, S., Nowak, B.J., Plunkett, W., Arlinghaus, R.B. and Farquhar, D. (1992) "Membrane-permeable dideoxyuridine 5'-monophosphate analogue inhibits human immunodeficiency virus infection." *Mol. Pharmacol.* 41, 441-445; Shaw, J.P., Jones, R.J. Arimilli, M.N., Louie, M.S., Lee, W.A. and Cundy, K.C. (1994) "Oral 30 bioavailability of PMEA from PMEA prodrugs in male Sprague-Dawley rats." *9th Annual AAPS Meeting.* San Diego, CA (Abstract). Shuto, S., Ueda, S., Imamura, S., Fukukawa, K. Matsuda, A. and Ueda, T. (1987) "A facile one-step synthesis of 5' phosphatidiynucleosides by an enzymatic two-phase reaction." *Tetrahedron Lett.* 28,

199-202; Shuto, S. Itoh, H., Ueda, S., Imamura, S., Kukukawa, K., Tsujino, M., Matsuda, A. and Ueda, T. (1988) *Pharm. Bull.* 36, 209-217. An example of a useful phosphate prodrug group is the S-acyl-2-thioethyl group, also referred to as "SATE".

III. Pharmaceutical Compositions

5 Humans suffering from effects caused by any of the diseases described herein, and in particular, an infection caused by a drug resistant strain of HIV, can be treated by administering to the patient an effective amount of the defined β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl nucleoside, and in particular, DAPD or DXG, in combination or alternation with an IMPDH inhibitor, including ribavirin or mycophenolic acid, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester thereof in the presence of a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent. The active materials can be administered by any appropriate route, for example, orally, parenterally, enterally, intravenously, intradermally, subcutaneously, topically, nasally, rectally, in liquid, or solid form.

10

15 The active compounds are included in the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent in an amount sufficient to deliver to a patient a therapeutically effective amount of compound to inhibit viral replication *in vivo*, especially HIV replication, without causing serious toxic effects in the treated patient. By "inhibitory amount" is meant an amount of active ingredient sufficient to exert an inhibitory effect as measured by, for example, an assay such as the ones described herein.

20 A preferred dose of the compound for all the above-mentioned conditions will be in the range from about 1 to 50 mg/kg, preferably 1 to 20 mg/kg, of body weight per day, more generally 0.1 to about 100 mg per kilogram body weight of the recipient per day. The effective dosage range of the pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives can be calculated based on the weight of the parent nucleoside to be delivered. If the derivative exhibits activity in itself, the effective dosage can be estimated as above using the weight of the derivative, or by other means known to those skilled in the art.

25

The compounds are conveniently administered in unit any suitable dosage form, including but not limited to one containing 7 to 3000 mg, preferably 70 to 1400 mg of

active ingredient per unit dosage form. An oral dosage of 50 to 1000 mg is usually convenient.

Ideally, at least one of the active ingredients, though preferably the combination of active ingredients, should be administered to achieve peak plasma concentrations of the active compound of from about 0.2 to 70 mM, preferably about 1.0 to 10 mM. This may be achieved, for example, by the intravenous injection of a 0.1 to 10 % solution of the active ingredient, optionally in saline, or administered as a bolus of the active ingredient.

The concentration of active compound in the drug composition will depend on absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion rates of the drug as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. It is to be noted that dosage values will also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that the concentration ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or practice of the claimed composition. The active ingredient may be administered at once, or may be divided into a number of smaller doses to be administered at varying intervals of time.

A preferred mode of administration of the active compound is oral. Oral compositions will generally include an inert diluent or an edible carrier. They may be enclosed in gelatin capsules or compressed into tablets. For the purpose of oral therapeutic administration, the active compound can be incorporated with excipients and used in the form of tablets, troches, or capsules. Pharmaceutically compatible bind agents, and/or adjuvant materials can be included as part of the composition.

The tablets, pills, capsules, troches and the like can contain any of the following ingredients, or compounds of a similar nature: a binder such as microcrystalline cellulose, gum tragacanth or gelatin; an excipient such as starch or lactose, a disintegrating agent such as alginic acid, Primogel, or corn starch; a lubricant such as magnesium stearate or Sterotes; a glidant such as colloidal silicon dioxide; a sweetening agent such as sucrose or saccharin; or a flavoring agent such as peppermint, methyl

salicylate, or orange flavoring. When the dosage unit form is a capsule, it can contain, in addition to material of the above type, a liquid carrier such as a fatty oil. In addition, dosage unit forms can contain various other materials which modify the physical form of the dosage unit, for example, coatings of sugar, shellac, or other enteric agents.

5 The compounds can be administered as a component of an elixir, suspension, syrup, wafer, chewing gum or the like. A syrup may contain, in addition to the active compounds, sucrose as a sweetening agent and certain preservatives, dyes and colorings and flavors.

10 The compounds or their pharmaceutically acceptable derivative or salts thereof can also be mixed with other active materials that do not impair the desired action, or with materials that supplement the desired action, such as antibiotics, anti-fungals, anti-inflammatories, protease inhibitors, or other nucleoside or non-nucleoside antiviral agents, as discussed in more detail above. Solutions or suspensions used for parental, intradermal, subcutaneous, or topical application can include the following components:

15 a sterile diluent such as water for injection, saline solution, fixed oils, polyethylene glycols, glycerine, propylene glycol or other synthetic solvents; antibacterial agents such as benzyl alcohol or methyl parabens; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid or sodium bisulfite; chelating agents such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; buffers such as acetates, citrates or phosphates and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride or dextrose. The parental preparation can be enclosed in ampoules, disposable

20 syringes or multiple dose vials made of glass or plastic.

If administered intravenously, preferred carriers are physiological saline or phosphate buffered saline (PBS).

25 If administered by nasal aerosol or inhalation, these compositions are prepared according to techniques well-known in the art of pharmaceutical formulation and may be prepared as solutions in saline, employing benzyl alcohol or other suitable preservatives, absorption promoters to enhance bioavailability, fluorocarbons, and/or other solubilizing or dispersing agents known in the art.

30 If rectally administered in the form of suppositories, these compositions may be prepared by mixing the drug with a suitable non-initiating excipient, such as cocoa

butter, synthetic glyceride esters of polyethylene glycols, which are solid at ordinary temperatures, but liquefy and/or dissolve in the rectal cavity to release the drug.

In a preferred embodiment, the active compounds are prepared with carriers that will protect the compound against rapid elimination from the body, such as a controlled 5 release formulation, including implants and micro-encapsulated delivery systems. Biodegradable, biocompatible polymers can be used, such as ethylene vinyl acetate, polyanhydrides, polyglycolic acid, collagen, polyorthoesters and polylactic acid. Methods for preparation of such formulations will be apparent to those skilled in the art. The materials can also be obtained commercially from Alza Corporation.

10 Liposomal suspensions (including liposomes targeted to infected cells with monoclonal antibodies to viral antigens) are also preferred as pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. These may be prepared according to methods known to those skilled in the art, for example, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,522,811 (which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety). For example, liposome formulations may be prepared 15 by dissolving appropriate lipid(s) (such as stearoyl phosphatidyl ethanolamine, stearoyl phosphatidyl choline, arachadoyl phosphatidyl choline, and cholesterol) in an inorganic solvent that is then evaporated, leaving behind a thin film of dried lipid on the surface of the container. An aqueous solution of the active compound or its monophosphate, diphosphate, and/or triphosphate derivatives is then introduced into the container. The 20 container is then swirled by hand to free lipid material from the sides of the container and to disperse lipid aggregates, thereby forming the liposomal suspension.

IV. Combination and Alteration Therapies for the Treatment of HIV Infection

In general, during alteration therapy, an effective dosage of each agent is administered serially, whereas in combination therapy, effective dosages of two or more agents are administered together. The dosages will depend on such factors as absorption, 25 bio-distribution, metabolism and excretion rates for each drug as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art. It is to be noted that dosage values will also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens and schedules should be adjusted over time

according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions. Examples of suitable dosage ranges can be found in the scientific literature and in the *Physicians Desk Reference*. Many examples of suitable dosage ranges for other compounds described herein are also found in public literature or can be identified using known procedures.
5 These dosage ranges can be modified as desired to achieve a desired result.

The disclosed combination and alternation regimens are useful in the prevention and treatment of HIV infections and other related conditions such as AIDS-related complex (ARC), persistent generalized lymphadenopathy (PGL), AIDS-related neurological conditions, anti-HIV antibody positive and HIV-positive conditions, Kaposi's sarcoma, thrombocytopenia purpurea and opportunistic infections. In addition, these compounds or formulations can be used prophylactically to prevent or retard the progression of clinical illness in individuals who are anti-HIV antibody or HIV-antigen positive or who have been exposed to HIV.
10

15 It has been discovered that, for example, this drug combination can be used to treat DAPD-resistant and DXG-resistant strains of HIV. DAPD and DXG resistant strains of HIV, after treatment with the disclosed drug combination, exhibit characteristics of drug-naïve virus.

In addition, compounds according to the present invention can be administered in
20 combination or alternation with one or more antiviral, anti-HBV, anti-HCV or anti-herpetic agent or interferon, anti-cancer, antiproliferative or antibacterial agents, including other compounds of the present invention. Certain compounds according to the present invention may be effective for enhancing the biological activity of certain agents according to the present invention by reducing the metabolism, catabolism or
25 inactivation of other compounds and as such, are co-administered for this intended effect.

Illustrative and nonlimiting examples of the present invention are provided below. These examples are not intended to limit the scope of the invention.

V. Ribavirin in Combination with DAPD

Ribavirin (RBV) was analyzed *in vitro* for activity against HIV-1 and for its effects on the *in vitro* anti-HIV activity of two dGTP analogues, DAPD and DXG. RBV was also evaluated for cytotoxicity in the laboratory adapted cell line MT2 and in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC). RBV is an inhibitor of the enzyme IMP dehydrogenase. This enzyme is part of the pathway utilized by cells for the *de novo* synthesis of GTP.

Cytotoxicity Assays:

RBV was tested for cytotoxicity on the laboratory adapted T-cell line MT2 and in PBMCs using a XTT based assay. The XTT (2,3-bis(2-methoxy-4-nitro-5-sulfoxyphenyl)-5[(phenylamino)carbonyl]-2H-tetrazolium hydroxide) assay is an *in vitro* colorimetric cyto-protection assay. Reduction of XTT by mitochondria dehydrogenases results in the cleavage of the tetrazolium ring of XTT, yielding orange formazan crystals, which are soluble in aqueous solution. The resultant orange solution was read in a spectrophotometer at a wavelength of 450nm. RBV was prepared in 100% DMSO at a final concentration of 100mM. For the cytotoxicity assays, a 2mM solution of RBV was prepared in cell culture media (RPMI supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, L-Glutamine 1mg/ml and 20ug/ml gentamicin) followed by 2 fold serial dilutions on a 96 well plate. Cells were added to the plat at 3×10^4 /well (MTX) and 2×10^5 /well (PBMC) and the plates were incubated for 5 days at 37°C in a 5% CO₂ incubator (addition of the cells to the plate diluted the compound to a final high concentration of 1mM). At the end of the 5-day incubation, XTT was added to each well and incubated at 37°C for 3 hours followed by the addition of acidified isopropanol. The plate was read at 450nm in a 96 well plate reader. A dose response curve was generated using the absorption values of cells grown in the absence of compound as 100% protection.

RBV was not toxic in these assays at concentration of up to 1mM, Table 1.

Table 1. Cytotoxicity of RBV

| Cell Type | CC ₅₀ |
|-----------|------------------|
| MT2 | >1 mM |
| PBMC | >1 mM |

Sensitivity Assays

5 *XXT Assay*

RBV was tested for activity against the xxLAI strain of HIV-1 in the laboratory adapted cell line MT2. Dilutions of RBV were made in cell culture media in a 96 well plate; the highest concentration tested was 100 µM. Triplicate samples of compound were tested. MT2 cells were infected with xxLAI at a multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 0.03 for 3 hours at 37°C in 5% CO₂. The infected cells were plated at 3.0 x 10⁴/well into a 96 well plated containing drug dilutions and incubated for 5 days at 37°C in CO₂. The antiviral activity of RBV was determined using the XTT assay described above. This method has been modified into a susceptibility assay and has been used in a variety of in vitro antiviral tests and is readily adaptable to any system with a lytic virus (Weislow, O.S., et. al.1989). Using the absorption values of the cell controls as 100% protection and no drug, virus infected cells as 0% protection, a dose response curve is generated by plotting % protection on the Y axis and drug concentration on the X axis. From this curve EC₅₀ values were determined.

RBV was not active against HIV-1 in these assays at any of the concentrations tested.

20 *P24 Assay*

RBV was also tested for activity against the xxLAI strain of HIV-1 in PBMCs using a p24 based ELISA assay. In this assay, cell supernatants were incubated on microelisa wells coated with antibodies to HIV-1 p24 core antigen. Subsequently, anti-HIV-1 conjugate labeled with horseradish peroxidase was added. The labeled antibody bound to the solid phase antibody/antigen complexes previously formed. Addition of the

tetramethylbenzidine substrate results in blue color formation. The color turned yellow when the reaction is stopped. The plates were then analyzed on a plate reader set at 490 nm. The absorbance is a direct measurement of the amount of HIV-1 produced in each well and a decrease in color indicates decreased viral production. Dilutions of RBV
5 were made in cell culture media in a 96 well plate, the highest concentration of RBV tested was 100 μ M. PBMC were obtained from HIV-1 negative donors by banding on Ficoll gradients, stimulated with phytohemagglutinin (PHAP) for 48 hours prior to infection with HIV-1, and infected with virus for 4 hours at 37°C at a MOI of 0.001. Infected cells were seeded into 96 well plates containing 5-fold serial dilutions of RBV.
10 Plates were incubated for 3 days at 37°C. The concentration of virus in each well was determined using the NEN p24 assay. Using the absorption values of the cell controls as 100% protection and drug free, virus infected cells as 0% protection, a dose response curve is generated by plotting percent protection on the Y axis and drug concentration on the X axis. From this curve, EC₅₀ values were determined.

15 RBV inhibited HIV-1 replication in PBMCs with a median EC₅₀ of 20.5 μ M \pm 11.8.

Combination Assays

20 The effects of RBV on the *in vitro* anti-HIV-1 activity of DAPD and DXG were evaluated using the MT2/XTT and PBMC/p24 assays described above. The effects of RBV on the activity of Abacavir and AZT were also analyzed.

MT2/XTT assays

25 Combination assays were performed using varying concentrations of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir and AZT alone or with a fixed concentration of RBV. Five fold serial dilutions of test compound were performed on 96 well plated with the following drug concentrations: DAPD 100 μ M, DXG 50 μ M, Abacavir 20 μ M and AZT 10 μ M. The concentrations of RBV used were 1, 5, 10, 20, 40 and 60 μ M. Assays were performed in the MT2 cell line as described above in the XXT sensitivity assay section. Addition of 30 40 and 60 μ M RBV, in combination with the compounds listed above, was found to be

toxic in these assays, therefore, EC₅₀ values for the compounds were determined in the presence and absence of 1, 5, 10 and 20 µM RBV (Table 2).

Table 2. Effects of RBV on the antiviral activity of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir and AZT in MT2 cells

5

Mean EC₅₀ values (µM)

| Compound | Control | 1 µM RBV | 5 µM RBV | 10 µM RBV | 20 µM RBV |
|----------|-----------------------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| DAPD | 18.5 (8) ^a | 8.2 (2) | 2.9 (2) | 1.6 (4) | 1.3 (4) |
| DXG | 2.65 (8) | 2.05 (2) | 0.58 (2) | 0.5 (2) | 0.22 (2) |
| Abacavir | 4.7 (6) | ND | 6.9 (2) | 6.4 (4) | 5.7 (4) |
| AZT | 1.7 (6) | 2.9 (2) | 4.6 (2) | 5.9 (4) | >10 (4) |

^a = number of replicates

Addition of 1, 5, 10 and 20 µM RBV decreased the EC₅₀ values obtained for DAPD and DXG. Table 3 illustrates the fold differences in EC₅₀ values obtained for each of the compounds in combination RBV.

10 Table 3. Fold differences in EC₅₀ values in combination with RBV in MT2 cells

| Compound | 1 µM RBV | 5 µM RBV | 10 µM RBV | 20 µM RBV |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| DAPD | 2.25 | 6.4 | 11.56 | 14.2 |
| DXG | 1.29 | 4.57 | 5.3 | 12 |
| Abacavir | ND | 0.68 | 0.73 | 0.82 |
| AZT | 0.59 | 0.37 | 0.29 | <0.17 |

Addition of 20 µM RBV had the greatest effect on the antiviral activity of DAPD and DXG with a 14.2 and 12 fold decrease in the apparent EC₅₀ values respectively. Addition of RBV had no effect (less than 2 fold difference in the apparent EC₅₀) on the activity of Abacavir. Addition of 20 µM RBV resulted in a greater than 6-fold increase in the apparent EC₅₀ of AZT indicating that the combination is antagonistic with respect to inhibition of HIV. Similar results were obtained with the addition of 1, 5 and 10, µM RBV, although to a lesser extent than that observed with the higher concentration of RBV.

DAPD Resistant HIV-1 mutants

The effect of RBV on the activity of DAPD and DXG against mutant strains of HIV was also analyzed (Table 4). The restraint strains analyzed included viruses created by site directed mutagenesis, K65R and L74V, as well as a recombinant virus containing mutations at positions 98S, 116Y, 151M and 215Y. The wild type backbone in which these mutants were created, xxLAI, was also analyzed for comparison. The concentrations of DAPD and DXG tested were as described in the above MT2/XTT combination assay section. RBV was tested in combination with DAPD and DXG at a fixed concentration of 20 μ M. The mutant viruses tested all demonstrated increased EC₅₀ values (greater than four fold) for both DAPD and DXG indicating resistance to these compounds. Addition of 20 μ M RBV decreased the EC₅₀ values of DAPD and DXG against these viruses. The EC₅₀ values determined for DAPD and DXG in the presence of 20 μ M RBV were at least 2.5-fold lower than those obtained for the wild type virus. These results are summarized in Table 4.

Table 4. Effects of RBV on the antiviral activity of DAPD and DXG: Resistant Virus

EC₅₀ values (μ M)

| Virus Isolate | DAPD | DAPD+RBV ^a | DXG | DXG+RBV |
|------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------|-------------|
| K65R | 43.7 (5.5) ^b | 0.9 (0.1) | 3.9 (5) | 0.29 (0.4) |
| L74V | 34 (4) | 0.5 (0.06) | 4.5 (5.6) | 0.25 (0.35) |
| A98S,F116Y,Q151M,T215Y | >100 (>12) | 2.6 (0.3) | 16 (20) | 0.3 (0.4) |

^a [RBV] = 20 μ M

^b indicates fold difference from WT

PBMC/p24 assays

Combination assays were also performed in PBMCs using varying concentrations of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir and AZT alone or with a fixed concentration of RBV. Compound dilutions and assay conditions were as described above. The concentrations of RBV used were 1, 5, 10, 20, 40 and 60 μ M. Addition of 40 and 60 μ M RBV, in combination with the compounds listed above, was found to be toxic in these assays.

The EC₅₀ values determined for the compounds in the presence and absence of 1, 5, 10 and 20 µM RBV are shown in Table 5.

Table 5. Effects of RBV on the antiviral activity of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir and AZT in PMBCs

5

Mean EC₅₀ values (µM)

| Compound | Control | 1 µM RBV | 5 µM RBV | 10 µM RBV | 20 µM RBV |
|----------|-----------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| DAPD | 4.5 (19) ^a | 2.26 (4) | 0.7 (5) | 0.16 (5) | <0.03 (3) |
| DXG | 0.15 (9) | 0.075 (3) | 0.027 (4) | <0.01 (3) | <0.01 (4) |
| Abacavir | 0.54 (9) | 0.2 (4) | 0.11 (4) | 0.03 (5) | <0.03 (5) |
| AZT | 0.003 (7) | 0.0035 (3) | 0.0026 (3) | 0.0022 (3) | 0.0021 (3) |

^a = number of replicates

Addition of 1 µM RBV resulted in a slight decrease (less than 3-fold) in the EC₅₀ of DAPD and DXG and Abacavir, but had no effect on the EC₅₀ value obtained for AZT.

These effects became more pronounced with increasing concentrations of RBV. Table 6

10

illustrates the fold differences in EC₅₀ values obtained for each of the compounds in combination with 1, 5, 10 and 20 µM RBV.

Table 6. Fold differences in EC₅₀ values with RBV

| Compound | 1 µM RBV | 5 µM RBV | 10 µM RBV | 20 µM RBV |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| DAPD | 2 | 6.4 | 28 | >150 |
| DXG | 2 | 5.6 | >15 | >15 |
| Abacavir | 2.7 | 4.9 | 18 | >18 |
| AZT | 0.86 | 1.2 | 1.4 | 1.4 |

RBV inhibited the replication of HIV-1 in PBMCs with an EC₅₀ of 20.5 µM.

Ribavirin was not toxic to these cells at concentrations up to 1 mM resulting in a therapeutic index of >48. Addition of 20 µM RBV to DAPD, DXG and Abacavir completely inhibited HIV replication in PBMCs at all the concentrations tested but had little effect on the activity of AZT. Addition of lower concentrations of RBV also had a significant effect on the activity of DAPD, DXG and Abacavir. In the MT2 cell line, RBV was not active against HIV replication. Addition of 20 µM RBV decreased the apparent EC₅₀ of DAPD and DXG, 14.2 and 12-fold respectively. Addition of 20 µM

15

20

RBV had no effect on the activity of Abacavir and resulted in a 6-fold increase in the apparent EC₅₀ of AZT indicating that the combination is antagonistic with respect to inhibition of HIV. Similar results were obtained in MT2s with the addition of 5 and 10 µM RBV, although to a lesser extent than that observed with the higher concentration of 5 RBV. When tested against mutant strains of HIV-1, the combination of 20 µM RBV with DAPD or DXG decreased the EC₅₀ values of these compounds to less than those observed with wild type virus, i.e. the previously resistant virus strains are now sensitive to inhibition by DAPD and DXG. Weislow, O.S., R. Kiser, D.L. Fine, J. Bader, R.H. Shoemaker, and M.R. Boyd. 1989. New soluble formazan assay for HIV-1 cytopathic effects: Application to high-flux screening of synthetic and natural products for AIDS-antiviral activity. J. of NCI. 81:577-586.

10

VI. Mycophenolic Acid in Combination with DAPD

Mycophenolic acid (MPA) was analyzed *in vitro* for activity against HIV-1 and for its effects on the *in vitro* anti-HIV activity of two dGTP analogues, DAPD and DXG. 15 MPA was also evaluated for cytotoxicity in the laboratory adapted cell line MT2 and in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC). MPA is an inhibitor of the enzyme IMP dehydrogenase. This enzyme is part of the pathway utilized by cells for the *de-novo* synthesis of GTP. Combination assays were also performed with Abacavir, AZT and FTC.

20

Cytotoxicity Assays:

MPA was tested for cytotoxicity on the laboratory adapted T-cell line MT2 and in PBMCs using a XTT based assay. The XTT (2,3-bis(2-methoxy-4-nitro-5-sulfophenyl)-5[(phenylamino)carbonyl]-2H-tetrazolium hydroxide) assay is an *in vitro* colorimetric cyto-protection assay. Reduction of XTT by mitochondria dehydrogenases results in the cleavage of the tetrazolium ring of XTT, yielding orange formazan crystals, which are soluble in aqueous solution. The resultant orange solution is read in a spectrophotometer at a wavelength of 450nm. MPA was prepared in 100% DMSO at a final concentration 25

of 100mM. For the cytotoxicity assays, a 200 μ M solution of MPA was prepared in cell culture media (RPMI supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, L-Glutamine 1mg/ml and 20ug/ml gentamicin) followed by 2 fold serial dilutions on a 96 well plate. Cells were added to the plat at 3x10⁴/well (MTX) and 2x10⁵/well (PBMC) and the plates were
5 incubated for 5 days at 37°C in a 5% CO₂ incubator (addition of the cells to the plate diluted the compound to a final high concentration of 100 μ M). At the end of the 5-day incubation, XTT was added to each well and incubated at 37°C for 3 hours followed by the addition of acidified isopropanol. The plate was read at 450nm in a 96 well plate reader. A dose response curve was generated using the absorption values of cells grown
10 in the absence of compound as 100% protection.

MPA was toxic in both cell lines with a 50% cytotoxic does (CC₅₀) of 5.7 μ M in the MT2 cell line and 4.5 μ M in PBMC. See Table 7.

Table 7. Cytotoxicity of MPA

| Cell Type | CC ₅₀ |
|-----------|------------------|
| MT2 | 5.7 μ M |
| PBMC | 4.5 μ M |

15

Sensitivity Assays

XTT Assay

MPA was tested for activity against the xxLAI strain of HIV-1 in the laboratory adapted cell line MT2. Dilutions of MPA were made in cell culture media in a 96 well plate; the highest concentration tested was 1 μ M. Triplicate samples of compound were tested. MT2 cells were infected with xxLAI at a multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 0.03 for 3 hours at 37°C in 5% CO₂. The infected cells were plated at 3.0 x 10⁴/well into a 96 well plated containing drug dilutions and incubated for 5 days at 37°C in CO₂. The antiviral activity of MPA was determined using the XTT assay described above. This method has been modified into a susceptibility assay and has been used in a variety of in vitro antiviral tests and is readily adaptable to any system with a lytic virus (Weislow, O.S., et. al. 1989). Using the absorption values of the cell controls as 100% protection and no drug, virus infected cells as 0% protection, a dose response curve is generated by
20
25

plotting % protection on the Y axis and drug concentration on the X axis. From this curve EC₅₀ values were determined. MPA was not active against HIV-1 in these assays at any of the concentrations tested.

5 *P24 Assay*

MPA was also tested for activity against the xxLAI strain of HIV-1 in PBMCs using a p24 based Elisa assay. In this assay, cell supernatants are incubated on microelisa wells coated with antibodies to HIV-1 p24 core antigen. Subsequently, anti-HIV-1 conjugate labeled with horse radish peroxidase is added. The labeled antibody binds to the solid phase antibody/antigen complexes previously formed. Addition of the tetramethylbenzidine substrate results in blue color formation. The color turns yellow when the reaction is stopped. The plates are then analyzed on a plate reader set at 490 nm. The absorbance is a direct measurement of the amount of HIV-1 produced in each well and a decrease in color indicates decreased viral production. Dilutions of MPA were made in cell culture media in a 96 well plate, the highest concentration of MPA tested was 1 µM. PBMC were obtained from HIV-1 negative donors by banding on Ficoll gradients, stimulated with phytohemagglutinin (PHAP) for 48 hours prior to infection with HIV-1, and infected with virus for 4 hours at 37°C at a MOI of 0.001. Infected cells were seeded into 96 well plates containing 4-fold serial dilutions of MPA. Plates were incubated for 3 days at 37°C. The concentration of virus in each well was determined using the NEN p24 assay. Using the absorption values of the cell controls as 100% protection and drug free, virus infected cells as 0% protection, a dose response curve is generated by plotting % protection on the Y axis and drug concentration on the X axis. From this curve EC₅₀ values were determined.

25 MPA inhibited HIV-1 replication in PBMCs with a median EC₅₀ of 95 nM ± 29.

Combination assays:

The effects of MPA on the *in vitro* anti-HIV-1 activity of DAPD and DXG were evaluated using the MT2/XTT and PBMC/p24 assays described above. The effects of MPA on the activity of Abacavir, AZT and FTC were also analyzed.

MT2/XTT assays

Combination assays were performed using varying concentrations of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir, AZT and FTC alone or with a fixed concentration of MPA. Five fold serial dilutions of test compound were performed on 96 well plated with the following drug concentrations: DAPD - 100 μ M, DXG - 50 μ M, Abacavir - 20 μ M and AZT - 10 μ M, and FTC - 10 μ M. The concentrations of MPA used were 1, 0.5, 0.25, 0.1, and 0.01 μ M. Assays were performed in the MT2 cell line as described in section 3.1. Addition of 1 and 0.5 μ M MPA, in combination with the compounds listed above, was found to be toxic in these assays, therefore, EC₅₀ values for the compounds were determined in the presence and absence of 0.25, 0.1, and 0.01 μ M MPA (Table 8).

Table 8. Effects of MPA on the antiviral activity of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir, AZT, and FTC in MT2 cells

| Mean EC ₅₀ values (μ M) | | | | |
|---|---------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| Compound | Control | 0.01 μ M MPA | 0.1 μ M MPA | 0.25 μ M MPA |
| DAPD | 20 (5) ^a | 22 (1) | 4.9 (1) | 1.2 (5) |
| DXG | 2.1 (5) | 2.5 (1) | 0.6 (1) | 0.2 (5) |
| Abacavir | 2.4 (3) | 2.4 (1) | 2.4 (1) | 1.4 (3) |
| AZT | 0.42 (2) | 0.3 (1) | 0.8 (1) | 0.95 (2) |
| FTC | 0.6 (2) | 0.62 (1) | 0.62 (1) | 0.4 (2) |

^a= number of replicates

Addition of 0.01 μ M MPA had no effect on the EC₅₀ values obtained for any of the compounds. Table 9 illustrates the fold differences in EC₅₀ values obtained for each of the compounds in combination with 0.1 and 0.25 μ M MPA.

Table 9. Fold Differences in EC₅₀ Values in Combination with MPA in MT2 cells

| Compound | 0.1 μ M MPA | 0.25 μ M MPA |
|----------|-----------------|------------------|
| DAPD | 4.1 | 16.7 |
| DXG | 3.5 | 10.5 |
| Abacavir | 1 | 1.7 |

| Compound | 0.1 μ M MPA | 0.25 μ M MPA |
|----------|-----------------|------------------|
| AZT | 0.5 | 0.44 |
| FTC | 1 | 1.5 |

Addition of 0.25 μ M MPA had the greatest effect on the antiviral activity of DAPD and DXG with a 16.7 and 10.5 fold decrease in the apparent EC₅₀ values respectively. Addition of 0.25 μ M MPA had little effect on the activity of Abacavir and
5 FTC, less than a 2 fold decrease in the apparent EC₅₀, and resulted in a 2.3 fold increase in the apparent EC₅₀ of AZT indicating that the combination is antagonistic with respect to inhibition of HIV. Similar results were obtained with the addition of 0.1 μ M MPA, although to a lesser extent than that observed with the higher concentration of MPA.

10 *DAPD Resistant HIV-1 mutants*

The effect of MPA on the activity of DAPD and DXG against mutant strains of HIV was also analyzed (Table 10). The restraint strains analyzed included viruses created by site directed mutagenesis, K65R and L74V, as well as a recombinant virus containing mutations at positions 98S, 116Y, 151M and 215Y. The wild type backbone in which these mutants were created, xxLAI, was also analyzed for comparison. The concentrations of DAPD and DXG tested were as described in section 4.1. MPA was tested in combination with DAPD and DXG at a fixed concentration of 0.25 μ M. DAPD and DXG were active against all of the wild type strains of HIV tested. The mutant viruses tested all demonstrated increased EC₅₀ values for both DAPD and DXG indicating resistance to these compounds. Addition of 0.25 μ M MPA decreased the EC₅₀ values of DAPD and DXG against these viruses. These values determined for DAPD and DXG in the presence of 0.25 μ M MPA were similar to those obtained for the wild type virus.
15
20

Table 10. Effects of MPA on the Antiviral Activity of DAPD and DXG: Resistant Virus
25 EC₅₀ values (μ M)

| Virus Isolate | DAPD | DAPD+MPA ^a | DXG | DXG+MPA |
|---------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------|-----------|
| K65R | 41 (6) ^b | 7.9 (1.1) | 4 (5.6) | 1.2 (1.3) |
| L74V | 39 (4.9) | 6.5 (0.8) | 3.8 (4.2) | 1 (1.1) |

| Virus Isolate | DAPD | DAPD+MPA ^a | DXG | DXG+MPA |
|------------------------|--------|-----------------------|----------|-----------|
| A98S,F116Y,Q151M,T215Y | 85 (6) | 7 (0.5) | 16 (8.4) | 1.4 (0.7) |

^a [MPA] = 0.25 μ M

^b indicates fold difference from WT

PBMC/p24 assays

5 Combination assays were also performed in PBMCs using varying concentrations of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir, AZT and FTC alone or with a fixed concentration of MPA. Compound dilutions and assay conditions were as described above. The concentrations of MPA used were 1, 0.5, 0.25, 0.1, and 0.01 μ M. Addition of 1 and 0.5 μ M MPA, in combination with the compounds listed above, was found to be toxic in these assays.

10 The EC₅₀ values determined for the compounds in the presence and absence of 0.25, 0.1, and 0.01 μ M MPA are shown in Table 11.

Table 11. Effects of MPA on the antiviral activity of DAPD, DXG, Abacavir, AZT, and FTC in PMBCs

Mean EC₅₀ values (μ M)

| Compound | Control | 0.01 μ M MPA | 0.1 μ M MPA | 0.25 μ M MPA |
|----------|----------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| DAPD | 4.1 (4) ^a | 0.9 (3) | 0.18 (5) | <0.0002 (2) |
| DXG | 0.14 (4) | 0.015 (3) | 0.006 (5) | <0.0002 (2) |
| Abacavir | 1.2 (4) | 1.1 (2) | 0.38 (3) | <0.0005 (2) |
| AZT | 0.0031 (3) | 0.0026 (3) | 0.0021 (3) | 0.0017 (3) |
| FTC | 0.011 (3) | 0.008 (3) | 0.0093 (3) | 0.006 (2) |

15 ^a= number of replicates

Addition of 0.01 μ M MPA decreased the EC₅₀ for DAPD and DXG but had no effect on the EC₅₀ values obtained for Abacavir, AZT and FTC (less than 2 fold change in EC₅₀). Addition of 0.1 and 0.25 μ M MPA decreased the EC₅₀ for DAPD, DXG and Abacavir, but had no effect on the EC₅₀ values obtained for AZT and FTC. Table 12 illustrates the fold differences in EC₅₀ values obtained for each of the compounds in combination with 0.01, 0.1 and 0.25 μ M MPA.

Table 12. Fold Differences in EC₅₀ Values with MPA

| Compound | 0.01 µM MPA | 0.1 µM MPA | 0.25 µM MPA |
|----------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| DAPD | 4.6 | 22.8 | >50 |
| DXG | 9.3 | 23.3 | >50 |
| Abacavir | 1.1 | 3.2 | >50 |
| AZT | 1.2 | 1.5 | 1.8 |
| FTC | 1.4 | 1.2 | 1.8 |

Mycophenolic acid inhibited the replication of HIV-1 in PBMCs with an EC₅₀ of 0.095 µM. CC₅₀ value obtained for MPA in these cells were 4.5 µM resulting in a therapeutic index of 47. Addition of 0.25 µM MPA to DAPD, DXG and Abacavir completely inhibited HIV replication in PBMCs at all the concentrations tested but had little effect on the activity of AZT and FTC (less than 2 - fold change in EC₅₀). Addition of lower concentrations of MPA also had a significant effect on the activity of DAPD, DXG but had little effect on the activity of Abacavir, AZT and FTC. In the MT2 cell line, MPA was not active against HIV replication. Addition of 0.25 µM MPA decreased the apparent EC₅₀ of DAPD and DXG, 16.7 and 10.5 - fold respectively. Addition of 0.25 µM MPA had little effect on the activity of Abacavir and FTC and resulted in a 2.3 - fold increase in the apparent EC₅₀ of AZT indicating that the combination is antagonistic with respect to inhibition of HIV. Similar results were obtained in MT2s with the addition of 0.1 µM MPA, although to a lesser extent than that observed with the higher concentration of MPA. When tested against mutant strains of HIV-1, the combination of 0.25 µM MPA with DAPD or DXG decreased the EC₅₀ values of these compounds to less than those observed with wild type virus, i.e. the previously resistant virus strains are now sensitive to inhibition by DAPD and DXG.

20

Concentration of DXG-TP in PBMCs

The effect of mycophenolic acid on the intracellular concentration of DXG-triphosphate (DXG-TP) was evaluated in peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMC). PBMC were obtained from HIV negative donors, stimulated with phytohemagglutinin, and incubated at 37 °C in complete media supplemented with various concentrations of

DXG (5 μ M or 50 μ M) in the presence or absence of 0.25 μ M mycophenolic acid. PBMC were harvested following 48 or 72 hours of incubation and the intracellular DXG-TP levels determined by LC-MS-MS as described below. Addition of 0.25 μ M mycophenolic acid increased the median concentration of intracellular DXG-TP by 1.7-fold as compared to the levels in cells incubated with DXG alone.

The bioanalytical method for the analysis of DXG-TP from peripheral blood mononuclear cells utilizes ion-pair solid phase extraction (SPE) and ion-pair HPLC coupled to electrospray ionization (ESI) mass spectrometry. Pelleted PBMC samples containing approximately 0.5×10^7 cells are diluted with a solution containing the internal standard (2', 3'-dideoxycytidine-5'- triphosphate (ddCTP)) and the DXG-TP and ddCTP are selectively extracted using ion-pair SPE on a C-18 cartridge. The DXG-TP and ddCTP are separated with microbore ion-pair HPLC on a Waters Xterra MS C18 analytical column with retention times of about 10 minutes. The compounds of interest are detected in the positive ion mode by ESI-MS/MS on a Micromass Quattro LC triple quadrupole mass spectrometer.

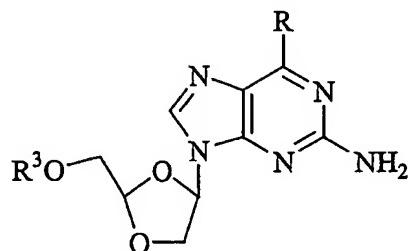
While analyzing DXG-TP PBMC samples, six point, $1/x^2$ weighted, quadratic calibration curves, ranging from 0.008 to 1.65pmoles/ 10^6 cells, are used to quantitate samples. Typically, quality control (QC) samples, at two concentrations (0.008 and 1.65pmoles/ 10^6 cells), are analyzed in duplicate in each analytical run to monitor the accuracy of the method.

The bioanalytical method has a reproducible extraction efficiency of approximately 80%. The limit of quantitation (LOQ) is 0.008pmoles/ 10^6 cells. The range of the assay is 0.008 to 1.65pmoles/ 10^6 cells.

This invention has been described with reference to its preferred embodiments. Variations and modifications of the invention, will be obvious to those skilled in the art from the foregoing detailed description of the invention. It is intended that all of these variations and modifications be included within the scope of this invention.

WE CLAIM:

1. A pharmaceutical composition for the treatment or prophylaxis of an HIV infection in a host, comprising an effective amount of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:

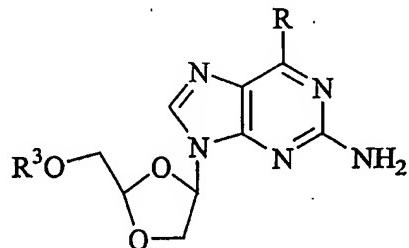


or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein

R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety, including a phospholipid, or an etherlipidin combination with at least one inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitor, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

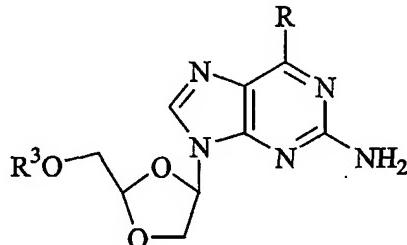
- 10
2. The composition of claim 1, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-adenine (DAPD).
- 15
3. The composition of claim 1, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is (-)-(2R,4R)-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-guanine (DXG).
- 20
4. The composition of any one of claims 1-3, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1- β -D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR) and (S)-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497).
5. The composition of claim 4, wherein the IMPDH inhibitors is mycophenolic acid.
6. The composition of claim 4, wherein the IMPDH inhibitors is ribavirin.

7. The composition of claims 1-6, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is enantiomerically enriched.
8. The composition of claim 1 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier suitable for oral delivery.
- 5 9. The composition of claim 1 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier suitable for intravenous delivery.
10. The composition of claim 1 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier suitable for parenteral delivery.
11. The composition of claim 1 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier suitable for topical delivery.
- 10 12. The composition of claim 1 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier suitable for systemic delivery.
13. A method for the treatment or prophylaxis of a drug resistant strain of HIV infection in a host, comprising administering an effective amount of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:
- 15



- or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein
R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety in combination or alternation with an inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.
- 20
14. The method of claim 13, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-adenine (DAPD).

15. The method of claim 13, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is $(-)(2R,4R)$ -9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-guanine (DXG).
16. The method of any one of claims 13-15, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1- β -D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR) and (S)-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497).
- 5
17. The method of claim 16, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is mycophenolic acid.
18. The method of claim 16, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is ribavirin.
- 10
19. The method of claim 16, wherein the HIV infection is resistant to DAPD and/or DXG.
20. The method of any one of claims 13-19, wherein the host is a human.
21. A method for the treatment or prophylaxis of HIV infection in a host, comprising administering an effective amount of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:



15

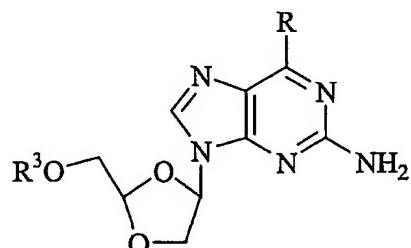
or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein

R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety in combination or alternation with an inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent.

20

22. The method of claim 21, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is $(-)(2R,4R)$ -2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-adenine (DAPD).
23. The method of claim 21, wherein the β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is $(-)(2R,4R)$ -9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-guanine (DXG).
- 25

24. The method of any one of claims 21-23, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1- β -D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR) and (S)-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497).
 25. The method of claim 24, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is mycophenolic acid.
 26. The method of claim 24, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is ribavirin.
 27. The method of any one of claims 21-26, wherein the host is a human.
 28. Use of an effective amount of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:



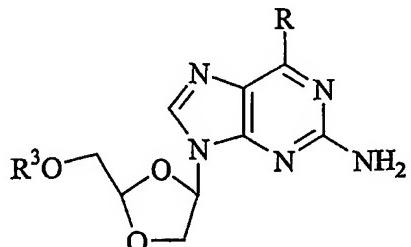
10

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein

15

R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl; R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety in combination or alternation with an inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitor, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent, for use in medical therapy.

29. Use of an effective amount of a β -D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:

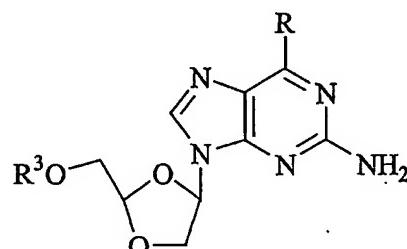


20

or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein

R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl, and R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety in combination or alternation with one or more effective inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent, for the treatment or prophylaxis of an HIV infection in a host.

- 5 30. Use of an effective amount of a β-D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine of the formula:



or its pharmaceutically acceptable salt or prodrug, wherein

10 R is H, OH, Cl, NH₂ or NR¹R²; R¹ and R² are independently hydrogen, alkyl or cycloalkyl; R³ is H, alkyl, aryl, acyl, phosphate, including monophosphate, diphosphate or triphosphate or a stabilized phosphate moiety, in combination or alternation with one or more effective inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase (IMPDH) inhibitors, optionally in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or diluent, in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment or prophylaxis of

15 an HIV infection in a host.

31. The use of any one of claims 29 or 30, wherein the β-D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is (-)-(2R,4R)-2-amino-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-adenine (DAPD).
32. The use of any one of claims 29 or 30, wherein the β-D-1,3-dioxolanyl purine is (-)-(2R,4R)-9-[(2-hydroxymethyl)-1,3-dioxolan-4-yl]-guanine (DXG).
- 20 33. The use of any one of claims 29 or 30, wherein at least one of the IMPDH inhibitors selected from the group consisting of ribavirin, mycophenolic acid, benzamide riboside, tiazofurin, selenazofurin, 5-ethynyl-1-β-D-ribofuranosylimidazole-4-carboxamide (EICAR) and (S)-N-3-[3-(3-methoxy-4-oxazol-5-yl-phenyl)-ureido]-benzyl-carbamic acid tetrahydrofuran-3-yl-ester (VX-497).

34. The use of claim 29 or 30, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is mycophenolic acid.
 35. The use of claim 29 or 30, wherein the IMPDH inhibitor is ribavirin.
 36. The use of claim 29 or 30, wherein the HIV infection is DAPD-resistant and/or DXG-resistant.
- 5 37. The use of any one of claims 29-36, wherein the host is a human.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
4 July 2002 (04.07.2002)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 02/052002 A2

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **C12N 15/11, A61K 31/7115, 31/713, 31/7125, 39/39 // A61P 11/06, 31/00, 37/08**

(21) International Application Number: **PCT/US01/50821**

(22) International Filing Date:
27 December 2001 (27.12.2001)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:
60/258,675 27 December 2000 (27.12.2000) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **DY-NAVAX TECHNOLOGIES CORPORATION [US/US]; Suite 100, 717 Potter Street, Berkeley, CA 94710 (US).**

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **FEARON, Karen, L. [US/US]; 4064 Valente Court, Lafayette, CA 94549 (US). DINA, Dino [US/US]; 6140 Buena Vista Avenue, Oakland, CA 94618 (US).**

(74) Agents: **ZACHOW, Karen, R. et al.; Morrison & Foerster LLP, 755 Page Mill Road, Palo Alto, CA 94304-1018 (US).**

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.



WO 02/052002 A2

(54) Title: IMMUNOMODULATORY POLYNUCLEOTIDES AND METHODS OF USING THE SAME

(57) Abstract: The invention provides immunomodulatory polynucleotides and methods for immunomodulation of individuals using the immunomodulatory polynucleotides.

IMMUNOMODULATORY POLYNUCLEOTIDES AND METHODS OF USING THE SAME**CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS**

5 This application claims the priority benefit of U.S. Provisional application 60/258,675, filed December 27, 2000, which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

TECHNICAL FIELD

10 The present invention relates to immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising an immunostimulatory oligonucleotide sequence (ISS). It also relates to the administration of the polynucleotides to modulate an immune response.

BACKGROUND ART

15 The type of immune response generated to infection or other antigenic challenge can generally be distinguished by the subset of T helper (Th) cells involved in the response. The Th1 subset is responsible for classical cell-mediated functions such as delayed-type hypersensitivity and activation of cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs), whereas the Th2 subset functions more effectively as a helper for B-cell activation. The type of immune response to an antigen is generally influenced by the cytokines produced by the cells responding to the antigen. Differences in the cytokines secreted by Th1 and Th2 cells are believed to reflect different biological functions of these two subsets. See, for example, Romagnani (2000) *Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 85:9-18.

20 The Th1 subset may be particularly suited to respond to viral infections, intracellular pathogens, and tumor cells because it secretes IL-2 and IFN- γ , which activate CTLs. The Th2 subset may be more suited to respond to free-living bacteria and helminthic parasites and may mediate allergic reactions, since IL-4 and IL-5 are known to induce IgE production and eosinophil activation, respectively. In general, Th1 and Th2 cells secrete distinct patterns of cytokines and so one type of response can moderate the activity of the other type of response. A shift in the Th1/Th2 balance can result in an allergic response, for example, or, alternatively, in an increased CTL response.

For many infectious diseases, such as tuberculosis and malaria, Th2-type responses are of little protective value against infection. Proposed vaccines using small peptides derived from the target antigen and other currently used antigenic agents that avoid use of potentially infective intact viral particles, do not always elicit the immune response necessary to achieve a therapeutic effect. The lack of a therapeutically effective human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) vaccine is an unfortunate example of this failure. Protein-based vaccines typically induce Th2-type immune responses, characterized by high titers of neutralizing antibodies but without significant cell-mediated immunity.

Moreover, some types of antibody responses are inappropriate in certain indications, most notably in allergy where an IgE antibody response can result in anaphylactic shock. Generally, allergic responses also involve Th2-type immune responses. Allergic responses, including those of allergic asthma, are characterized by an early phase response, which occurs within seconds to minutes of allergen exposure and is characterized by cellular degranulation, and a late phase response, which occurs 4 to 24 hours later and is characterized by infiltration of eosinophils into the site of allergen exposure. Specifically, during the early phase of the allergic response, allergen cross-links IgE antibodies on basophils and mast cells, which in turn triggers degranulation and the subsequent release of histamine and other mediators of inflammation from mast cells and basophils. During the late phase response, eosinophils infiltrate into the site of allergen exposure (where tissue damage and dysfunction result).

Antigen immunotherapy for allergic disorders involves the subcutaneous injection of small, but gradually increasing amounts, of antigen. Such immunization treatments present the risk of inducing IgE-mediated anaphylaxis and do not efficiently address the cytokine-mediated events of the allergic late phase response. Thus far, this approach has yielded only limited success.

Administration of certain DNA sequences, generally known as immunostimulatory sequences or "ISS," induces an immune response with a Th1-type bias as indicated by secretion of Th1-associated cytokines. Administration of an immunostimulatory polynucleotide with an antigen results in a Th1-type immune response to the administered antigen. Roman et al. (1997) *Nature Med.* 3:849-854. For example, mice injected intradermally with *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) β -galactosidase (β -Gal) in saline or in the adjuvant alum responded by producing specific IgG1 and IgE antibodies, and CD4 $^{+}$ cells

that secreted IL-4 and IL-5, but not IFN- γ , demonstrating that the T cells were predominantly of the Th2 subset. However, mice injected intradermally (or with a tyne skin scratch applicator) with plasmid DNA (in saline) encoding β -Gal and containing an ISS responded by producing IgG2a antibodies and CD4 $^{+}$ cells that secreted IFN- γ , but not IL-4 and IL-5, demonstrating that the T cells were predominantly of the Th1 subset.

Moreover, specific IgE production by the plasmid DNA-injected mice was reduced 66-75%. Raz et al. (1996) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:5141-5145. In general, the response to naked DNA immunization is characterized by production of IL-2, TNF α and IFN- γ by antigen-stimulated CD4 $^{+}$ T cells, which is indicative of a Th1-type response. This is particularly important in treatment of allergy and asthma as shown by the decreased IgE production. The ability of immunostimulatory polynucleotides to stimulate a Th1-type immune response has been demonstrated with bacterial antigens, viral antigens and with allergens (see, for example, WO 98/55495).

Other references describing ISS include: Krieg et al. (1989) *J. Immunol.* 143:2448-2451; Tokunaga et al. (1992) *Microbiol. Immunol.* 36:55-66; Kataoka et al. (1992) *Jpn. J. Cancer Res.* 83:244-247; Yamamoto et al. (1992) *J. Immunol.* 148:4072-4076; Mojck et al. (1993) *Clin. Immuno. and Immunopathol.* 67:130-136; Branda et al. (1993) *Biochem. Pharmacol.* 45:2037-2043; Pisetsky et al. (1994) *Life Sci.* 54(2):101-107; Yamamoto et al. (1994a) *Antisense Research and Development.* 4:119-122; Yamamoto et al. (1994b) *Jpn. J. Cancer Res.* 85:775-779; Raz et al. (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:9519-9523; Kimura et al. (1994) *J. Biochem. (Tokyo)* 116:991-994; Krieg et al. (1995) *Nature* 374:546-549; Pisetsky et al. (1995) *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 772:152-163; Pisetsky (1996a) *J. Immunol.* 156:421-423; Pisetsky (1996b) *Immunity* 5:303-310; Zhao et al. (1996) *Biochem. Pharmacol.* 51:173-182; Yi et al. (1996) *J. Immunol.* 156:558-564; Krieg (1996) *Trends Microbiol.* 4(2):73-76; Krieg et al. (1996) *Antisense Nucleic Acid Drug Dev.* 6:133-139; Klinman et al. (1996) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 93:2879-2883; Raz et al. (1996); Sato et al. (1996) *Science* 273:352-354; Stacey et al. (1996) *J. Immunol.* 157:2116-2122; Ballas et al. (1996) *J. Immunol.* 157:1840-1845; Branda et al. (1996) *J. Lab. Clin. Med.* 128:329-338; Sonehara et al. (1996) *J. Interferon and Cytokine Res.* 16:799-803; Klinman et al. (1997) *J. Immunol.* 158:3635-3639; Sparwasser et al. (1997) *Eur. J. Immunol.* 27:1671-1679; Roman et al. (1997); Carson et al. (1997) *J. Exp. Med.* 186:1621-1622; Chace et al. (1997) *Clin. Immunol. and Immunopathol.* 84:185-193; Chu et al. (1997) *J. Exp. Med.*

186:1623-1631; Lipford et al. (1997a) *Eur. J. Immunol.* 27:2340-2344; Lipford et al.
(1997b) *Eur. J. Immunol.* 27:3420-3426; Weiner et al. (1997) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*
94:10833-10837; Macfarlane et al. (1997) *Immunology* 91:586-593; Schwartz et al. (1997)
J. Clin. Invest. 100:68-73; Stein et al. (1997) *Antisense Technology*, Ch. 11 pp. 241-264, C.
5 Lichtenstein and W. Nellen, Eds., IRL Press; Wooldridge et al. (1997) *Blood* 89:2994-
2998; Leclerc et al. (1997) *Cell. Immunol.* 179:97-106; Kline et al. (1997) *J. Invest. Med.*
45(3):282A; Yi et al. (1998a) *J. Immunol.* 160:1240-1245; Yi et al. (1998b) *J. Immunol.*
160:4755-4761; Yi et al. (1998c) *J. Immunol.* 160:5898-5906; Yi et al. (1998d) *J. Immunol.*
161:4493-4497; Krieg (1998) *Applied Antisense Oligonucleotide Technology* Ch. 24, pp.
10 431-448, C.A. Stein and A.M. Krieg, Eds., Wiley-Liss, Inc.; Krieg et al. (1998a) *Trends*
Microbiol. 6:23-27; Krieg et al. (1998b) *J. Immunol.* 161:2428-2434; Krieg et al. (1998c)
Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 95:12631-12636; Spiegelberg et al. (1998) *Allergy* 53(4S):93-
97; Horner et al. (1998) *Cell Immunol.* 190:77-82; Jakob et al. (1998) *J. Immunol.*
161:3042-3049; Redford et al. (1998) *J. Immunol.* 161:3930-3935; Weeratna et al. (1998)
15 *Antisense & Nucleic Acid Drug Development* 8:351-356; McCluskie et al. (1998) *J.*
Immunol. 161(9):4463-4466; Gramzinski et al. (1998) *Mol. Med.* 4:109-118; Liu et al.
(1998) *Blood* 92:3730-3736; Moldoveanu et al. (1998) *Vaccine* 16: 1216-1224; Brazolot.
Milan et al. (1998) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 95:15553-15558; Briode et al. (1998) *J.*
Immunol. 161:7054-7062; Briode et al. (1999) *Int. Arch. Allergy Immunol.* 118:453-456;
20 Kovarik et al. (1999) *J. Immunol.* 162:1611-1617; Spiegelberg et al. (1999) *Pediatr.*
Pulmonol. Suppl. 18:118-121; Martin-Orozco et al. (1999) *Int. Immunol.* 11:1111-1118;
EP 468,520; WO 96/02555; WO 97/28259; WO 98/16247; WO 98/18810; WO 98/37919;
WO 98/40100; WO 98/52581; WO 98/55495; WO 98/55609 and WO 99/11275. See also
Elkins et al. (1999) *J. Immunol.* 162:2291-2298, WO 98/52962, WO 99/33488, WO
25 99/33868, WO 99/51259 and WO 99/62923. See also Zimmermann et al. (1998) *J.*
Immunol. 160:3627-3630; Krieg (1999) *Trends Microbiol.* 7:64-65 and U.S. Patent Nos.
5,663,153, 5,723,335 and 5,849,719. See also Liang et al. (1996) *J. Clin. Invest.* 98:1119-
1129; Bohle et al. (1999) *Eur. J. Immunol.* 29:2344-2353 and WO 99/56755. See also WO
99/61056; WO 00/06588; WO 00/16804; WO 00/21556; WO 00/54803; WO 00/61151;
30 WO 00/67023; WO 00/67787 and U.S. Patent No. 6,090,791. See also Manzel et al. (1999)
Antisense Nucl. Acid Drug Dev. 9:459-464; Verthelyi et al. (2001) *J. Immunol.* 166:2372-
2377; WO 01/15726; WO 01/12223; WO 01/22972; WO 01/22990; WO 01/35991; WO

01/51500; WO 01/54720; U.S. Patent Nos. 6,174,872, 6,194,388, 6,207,646, 6,214,806, 6,218,371, 6,239,116.

ISS generally include a CG sequence. Nucleotides flanking the CG of an ISS also appear to play a role in the immunomodulatory activity of the polynucleotide. There remains a need for continued identification of ISS for use in immunomodulatory polynucleotides.

All patents, patent applications, and publications cited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

10

DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates to immunostimulatory sequences (ISS) and immunomodulatory polynucleotides containing ISS and methods for modulating immune responses in individuals using these polynucleotides, particularly humans.

In one aspect, the invention provides immunomodulatory polynucleotides which comprise an immunostimulatory sequence (ISS). In certain embodiments, the invention includes compositions which comprise an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention and a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

In one aspect, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention comprises an ISS comprising a sequence of the formula 5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 62) wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z (Z= 5-bromocytosine), wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U and wherein the formula is not 5'-TGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 63) or 5'-GGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 64).

In another aspect, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention comprises an ISS comprising a sequence of the formula 5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ Z G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 65) wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine, wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z (Z= 5-bromocytosine), wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U and wherein the formula is not 5'-TGAAZGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 66; Z= 5-bromocytosine).

In another aspect, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention comprises at least one of the following sequences: TGAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 67), GAACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 75), CGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 77), ZGAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 93) and GAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 89), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine.

In another aspect, with respect to any of the ISS disclosed herein, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention may further comprise one or more TCG and/or T, 5'-bromocytosine, G sequence(s), preferably 5' (or upstream) of the ISS.

5 In another aspect, with respect to any of the ISS disclosed herein, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention may further comprise one or more TCGA and/or T, 5'-bromocytosine, G, A sequence(s).

In another aspect, any immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention is stabilized.

10 In another aspect, the invention provides an immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier complex including an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention linked to a microcarrier, in particular to a microcarrier less than 10 µm in size.

15 In another aspect, the invention provides compositions comprising any of the immunomodulatory polynucleotides (including complexed with a microcarrier) described herein. The compositions may also include, for example, a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient or any of a number of other components, such as an antigen.

20 In another aspect, the invention provides methods of modulating an immune response in an individual, comprising administering to an individual an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention in an amount sufficient to modulate an immune response in said individual. Immunomodulation according to the methods of the invention may be practiced on individuals including those suffering from a disorder associated with a Th2-type immune response (e.g., allergies or allergy-induced asthma), individuals receiving vaccines such as therapeutic vaccines (e.g., vaccines comprising an allergy epitope, a mycobacterial epitope, or a tumor associated epitope) or prophylactic vaccines, individuals 25 with cancer and individuals having an infectious disease.

30 In a further aspect, the invention provides methods of increasing interferon-gamma (IFN- γ) in an individual (or stimulating IFN- γ levels (or amount(s)) in an individual), comprising administering an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention to the individual. Administration of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide in accordance with the invention increases IFN- γ in the individual. Suitable subjects for these methods include those individuals who could benefit from an increase of IFN- γ , or such individuals having idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF), scleroderma, cutaneous radiation-

induced fibrosis, hepatic fibrosis including schistosomiasis-induced hepatic fibrosis, renal fibrosis as well as other conditions which may be improved by administration of IFN- γ .

In a further aspect, the invention provides methods of increasing interferon-alpha (IFN- α) in an individual (or stimulating IFN- α levels (or amount(s)) in an individual), comprising administering an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention to the individual. Administration of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide in accordance with the invention increases IFN- α in the individual. Suitable subjects for these methods include those individuals having a viral infection as well as other conditions which may be improved by administration of IFN- α or an increase in amount of IFN- α .

10 In another aspect, the invention provides methods of ameliorating one or more symptoms of an infectious disease, comprising administering an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention to an individual having an infectious disease. Administration of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide in accordance with the invention ameliorates one or more symptoms of the infectious disease. The infectious diseases which may be treated in accordance with the invention include infectious diseases caused by a cellular pathogen (e.g., a mycobacterial disease, malaria, leishmaniasis, toxoplasmosis, schistosomiasis or clonorchiasis), and may include or exclude viral diseases.

20 The invention further relates to kits, preferably for carrying out the methods of the invention. The kits of the invention generally comprise an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention (generally in a suitable container), and may further include instructions for use of the immunomodulatory polynucleotide in immunomodulation of an individual, for example when the individual suffers from a disorder associated with a Th2-type immune response (e.g., allergies or allergy-induced asthma), is receiving vaccines such as therapeutic vaccines (e.g., vaccines comprising an allergy epitope, a mycobacterial epitope, or a tumor associated epitope) or prophylactic vaccines, suffers from cancer or suffers from an infectious disease. Other suitable instructions may be provided.

MODES FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

30 We have discovered immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising immunostimulatory sequences (ISS) and methods for modulating immune responses in individuals, particularly humans, using these immunomodulatory polynucleotides. The

compositions of the invention comprise an immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprising an ISS as described herein. Some immunomodulatory polynucleotides of the invention further include at least one TCG or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence. In some immunomodulatory polynucleotides, the additional TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) is created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, 5-bromocytosine to the 5' end of the ISS. We have found that immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising specific ISS efficiently modulate immune cells, including human cells. Our discovery is of particular interest because human cells can be more resistant to immunomodulation by immunomodulatory polynucleotides than cells from commonly used laboratory animals, such as mice. We have also observed that some polynucleotides of the invention effectively stimulate IFN- α , even in human cells.

The invention also provides methods for modulating an immune response in an individual by administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention to the individual.

Further provided are kits comprising the ISS-containing polynucleotides of the invention. The kits may further comprise instructions for administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention for immunomodulation in a subject and immunomodulatory polynucleotides.

General Techniques

The practice of the present invention will employ, unless otherwise indicated, conventional techniques of molecular biology (including recombinant techniques), microbiology, cell biology, biochemistry and immunology, which are within the skill of the art. Such techniques are explained fully in the literature, such as, *Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual*, second edition (Sambrook et al., 1989); *Oligonucleotide Synthesis* (M.J. Gait, ed., 1984); *Animal Cell Culture* (R.I. Freshney, ed., 1987); *Handbook of Experimental Immunology* (D.M. Weir & C.C. Blackwell, eds.); *Gene Transfer Vectors for Mammalian Cells* (J.M. Miller & M.P. Calos, eds., 1987); *Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (F.M. Ausubel et al., eds., 1987); *PCR: The Polymerase Chain Reaction*, (Mullis et al., eds., 1994); *Current Protocols in Immunology* (J.E. Coligan et al., eds., 1991); *The Immunoassay Handbook* (D. Wild, ed., Stockton Press NY, 1994); *Bioconjugate Techniques*(Greg T. Hermanson, ed., Academic Press, 1996); and *Methods of*

Immunological Analysis (R. Masseyeff, W.H. Albert, and N.A. Staines, eds., Weinheim: VCH Verlags gesellschaft mbH, 1993).

Definitions

As used herein, the singular form "a", "an", and "the" includes plural references unless indicated otherwise. For example, "an" ISS includes one or more ISS.

As used interchangeably herein, the terms "polynucleotide" and "oligonucleotide" include single-stranded DNA (ssDNA), double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), single-stranded RNA (ssRNA) and double-stranded RNA (dsRNA), modified oligonucleotides and oligonucleosides or combinations thereof. The oligonucleotide can be linearly or circularly configured, or the oligonucleotide can contain both linear and circular segments.

Oligonucleotides are polymers of nucleosides joined, generally, through phosphodiester linkages, although alternate linkages, such as phosphorothioate esters may also be used in oligonucleotides. A nucleoside consists of a purine (adenine (A) or guanine (G) or derivative thereof) or pyrimidine (thymine (T), cytosine (C) or uracil (U), or derivative thereof) base bonded to a sugar. The four nucleoside units (or bases) in DNA are called deoxyadenosine, deoxyguanosine, deoxythymidine, and deoxycytidine. A nucleotide is a phosphate ester of a nucleoside.

The term "ISS" as used herein refers to polynucleotide sequences that effect and/or contribute to a measurable immune response as measured *in vitro*, *in vivo* and/or *ex vivo*.

Examples of measurable immune responses include, but are not limited to, antigen-specific antibody production, secretion of cytokines, activation or expansion of lymphocyte populations such as NK cells, CD4+ T lymphocytes, CD8+ T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, and the like. Preferably, the ISS sequences preferentially activate a Th1-type response. A polynucleotide for use in the invention contains at least one ISS. As used herein, "ISS" is also a shorthand term for an ISS-containing polynucleotide, including the ISS-containing immunomodulatory polynucleotides of the invention.

The term "3'" generally refers to a region or position in a polynucleotide or oligonucleotide 3' (downstream) from another region or position in the same polynucleotide or oligonucleotide.

The term "5'" generally refers to a region or position in a polynucleotide or oligonucleotide 5' (upstream) from another region or position in the same polynucleotide or oligonucleotide.

A region, portion, or sequence which is “adjacent” to another sequence directly abuts that region, portion, or sequence. For example, an additional polynucleotide sequence which is adjacent to the ISS portion of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide directly abuts that region.

5 The term “immunomodulatory polynucleotide” or “IMP” or “ISS-containing polynucleotide”, as used herein, refers to a polynucleotide comprising at least one ISS. In certain embodiments, the IMP is an ISS.

The term “immunomodulatory” or “modulating an immune response” as used herein includes immunostimulatory as well as immunosuppressive effects.

10 Immunomodulation is primarily a qualitative alteration in an overall immune response, although quantitative changes may also occur in conjunction with immunomodulation. An immune response that is immunomodulated according to the present invention is one that is shifted towards a “Th1-type” immune response, as opposed to a “Th2-type” immune response. Th1-type responses are typically considered cellular immune system (*e.g.*, cytotoxic lymphocytes) responses, while Th2-type responses are generally “humoral”, or antibody-based. Th1-type immune responses are normally characterized by “delayed-type hypersensitivity” reactions to an antigen, and can be detected at the biochemical level by increased levels of Th1-associated cytokines such as IFN- γ , IFN- α , IL-2, IL-12, and TNF- β , as well as IL-6, although IL-6 may also be associated with Th2-type responses as well.

20 Th1-type immune responses are generally associated with the production of cytotoxic lymphocytes (CTLs) and low levels or transient production of antibody. Th2-type immune responses are generally associated with higher levels of antibody production, including IgE production, an absence of or minimal CTL production, as well as expression of Th2-associated cytokines such as IL-4. Accordingly, immunomodulation in accordance with the invention may be recognized by, for example, an increase in IFN- γ and/or a decrease in IgE production in an individual treated in accordance with the methods of the invention as compared to the absence of treatment.

25 The term “conjugate” refers to a complex in which an ISS-containing polynucleotide and an antigen are linked. Such conjugate linkages include covalent and/or non-covalent linkages.

30 The term “antigen” means a substance that is recognized and bound specifically by an antibody or by a T cell antigen receptor. Antigens can include peptides, proteins,

glycoproteins, polysaccharides, complex carbohydrates, sugars, gangliosides, lipids and phospholipids; portions thereof and combinations thereof. The antigens can be those found in nature or can be synthetic. Antigens suitable for administration with ISS include any molecule capable of eliciting a B cell or T cell antigen-specific response. Preferably, 5 antigens elicit an antibody response specific for the antigen. Haptens are included within the scope of "antigen." A hapten is a low molecular weight compound that is not immunogenic by itself but is rendered immunogenic when conjugated with an immunogenic molecule containing antigenic determinants. Small molecules may need to be haptenized in order to be rendered antigenic. Preferably, antigens of the present 10 invention include peptides, lipids (e.g. sterols, fatty acids, and phospholipids), polysaccharides such as those used in Hemophilus influenza vaccines, gangliosides and glycoproteins.

15 "Adjuvant" refers to a substance which, when added to an immunogenic agent such as antigen, nonspecifically enhances or potentiates an immune response to the agent in the recipient host upon exposure to the mixture.

20 The term "peptide" are polypeptides that are of sufficient length and composition to effect a biological response, e.g., antibody production or cytokine activity whether or not the peptide is a hapten. Typically, the peptides are at least six amino acid residues in length. The term "peptide" further includes modified amino acids (whether or not naturally occurring), such modifications including, but not limited to, phosphorylation, glycosylation, pegylation, lipidization and methylation.

25 "Antigenic peptides" can include purified native peptides, synthetic peptides, recombinant proteins, crude protein extracts, attenuated or inactivated viruses, cells, micro-organisms, or fragments of such peptides. An "antigenic peptide" or "antigen polypeptide" accordingly means all or a portion of a polypeptide which exhibits one or more antigenic properties. Thus, for example, an "Amb a 1 antigenic polypeptide" or "Amb a 1 polypeptide antigen" is an amino acid sequence from Amb a 1, whether the entire sequence, a portion of the sequence, and/or a modification of the sequence, which exhibits an antigenic property (*i.e.*, binds specifically to an antibody or a T cell receptor).

30 A "delivery molecule" or "delivery vehicle" is a chemical moiety which facilitates, permits, and/or enhances delivery of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide to a particular

site and/or with respect to particular timing. A delivery vehicle may or may not additionally stimulate an immune response.

An "allergic response to antigen" means an immune response generally characterized by the generation of eosinophils and/or antigen-specific IgE and their resultant effects. As is well-known in the art, IgE binds to IgE receptors on mast cells and basophils. Upon later exposure to the antigen recognized by the IgE, the antigen cross-links the IgE on the mast cells and basophils causing degranulation of these cells, including, but not limited, to histamine release. It is understood and intended that the terms "allergic response to antigen", "allergy", and "allergic condition" are equally appropriate for application of some of the methods of the invention. Further, it is understood and intended that the methods of the invention include those that are equally appropriate for prevention of an allergic response as well as treating a pre-existing allergic condition.

As used herein, the term "allergen" means an antigen or antigenic portion of a molecule, usually a protein, which elicits an allergic response upon exposure to a subject. Typically the subject is allergic to the allergen as indicated, for instance, by the wheal and flare test or any method known in the art. A molecule is said to be an allergen even if only a small subset of subjects exhibit an allergic (e.g., IgE) immune response upon exposure to the molecule. A number of isolated allergens are known in the art. These include, but are not limited to, those provided in Table 1 herein.

The term "desensitization" refers to the process of the administration of increasing doses of an allergen to which the subject has demonstrated sensitivity. Examples of allergen doses used for desensitization are known in the art, see, for example, Fornadley (1998) *Otolaryngol. Clin. North Am.* 31:111-127.

"Antigen-specific immunotherapy" refers to any form of immunotherapy which involves antigen and generates an antigen-specific modulation of the immune response. In the allergy context, antigen-specific immunotherapy includes, but is not limited to, desensitization therapy.

The term "microcarrier" refers to a particulate composition which is insoluble in water and which has a size of less than about 150, 120 or 100 μm , preferably less than about 50-60 μm , preferably less than about 10 μm , preferably less than about 5, 2.5, 2 or 1.5 μm . Microcarriers include "nanocarriers", which are microcarriers having a size of less than about 1 μm , preferably less than about 500 nm. Microcarriers include solid phase

particles such as particles formed from biocompatible naturally occurring polymers, synthetic polymers or synthetic copolymers, although microcarriers formed from agarose or cross-linked agarose may be included or excluded from the definition of microcarriers herein as well as other biodegradable materials known in the art. Microcarriers for use in the instant invention may be biodegradable or nonbiodegradable. Nonbiodegradable solid phase microcarriers are formed from polymers or other materials which are non-erodible and/or non-degradable under mammalian physiological conditions, such as polystyrene, polypropylene, silica, ceramic, polyacrylamide, gold, latex, hydroxyapatite, dextran, and ferromagnetic and paramagnetic materials. Biodegradable solid phase microcarriers may be formed from polymers which are degradable (e.g., poly(lactic acid), poly(glycolic acid) and copolymers thereof) or erodible (e.g., poly(ortho esters such as 3,9-diethylidene-2,4,8,10-tetraoxaspiro[5.5]undecane (DETOSU) or poly(anhydrides), such as poly(anhydrides) of sebacic acid) under mammalian physiological conditions.

Microcarriers may also be liquid phase (e.g., oil or lipid based), such liposomes, iscoms (immune-stimulating complexes, which are stable complexes of cholesterol, phospholipid and adjuvant-active saponin) without antigen, or droplets or micelles found in oil-in-water or water-in-oil emulsions. Biodegradable liquid phase microcarriers typically incorporate a biodegradable oil, a number of which are known in the art, including squalene and vegetable oils. Microcarriers are typically spherical in shape, but microcarriers which deviate from speherical shape are also acceptable (e.g., ellipsoidal, rod-shaped, etc.). Due to their insoluble nature (with respect to water), microcarriers are filterable from water and water-based (aqueous) solutions.

The term "nonbiodegradable", as used herein, refers to a microcarrier which is not degraded or eroded under normal mammalian physiological conditions. Generally, a microcarrier is considered nonbiodegradable if it not degraded (*i.e.*, loses less than 5% of its mass or average polymer length) after a 72 hour incubation at 37° C in normal human serum.

A microcarrier is considered "biodegradable" if it is degradable or erodable under normal mammalian physiological conditions. Generally, a microcarrier is considered biodegradable if it is degraded (*i.e.*, loses at least 5% of its mass or average polymer length) after a 72 hour incubation at 37° C in normal human serum.

The "size" of a microcarrier is generally the "design size" or intended size of the particles stated by the manufacturer. Size may be a directly measured dimension, such as average or maximum diameter, or may be determined by an indirect assay such as a filtration screening assay. Direct measurement of microcarrier size is typically carried out by microscopy, generally light microscopy or scanning electron microscopy (SEM), in comparison with particles of known size or by reference to a micrometer. As minor variations in size arise during the manufacturing process, microcarriers are considered to be of a stated size if measurements show the microcarriers are \pm about 5-10% of the stated measurement. Size characteristics may also be determined by dynamic light scattering or obscuration techniques. Alternately, microcarrier size may be determined by filtration screening assays. A microcarrier is less than a stated size if at least 97% of the particles pass through a "screen-type" filter (*i.e.*, a filter in which retained particles are on the surface of the filter, such as polycarbonate or polyethersulfone filters, as opposed to a "depth filter" in which retained particles lodge within the filter) of the stated size. A microcarrier is larger than a stated size if at least about 97% of the microcarrier particles are retained by a screen-type filter of the stated size. Thus, at least about 97% microcarriers of about 10 μm to about 10 nm in size pass through a 10 μm pore screen filter and are retained by a 10 nm screen filter.

As above discussion indicates, reference to a size or size range for a microcarrier implicitly includes approximate variations and approximations of the stated size and/or size range. This is reflected by use of the term "about" when referring to a size and/or size range, and reference to a size or size range without reference to "about" does not mean that the size and/or size range is exact.

The term "immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier complex" or "IMP/MC complex" refers to a complex of an ISS-containing polynucleotide and a microcarrier. The components of the complex may be covalently or non-covalently linked. Non-covalent linkages may be mediated by any non-covalent bonding force, including by hydrophobic interaction, ionic (electrostatic) bonding, hydrogen bonds and/or van der Waals attractions. In the case of hydrophobic linkages, the linkage is generally via a hydrophobic moiety (e.g., cholesterol) covalently linked to the IMP.

An "individual" is a vertebrate, such as avian, and is preferably a mammal, more preferably a human. Mammals include, but are not limited to, humans, primates, farm animals, sport animals, rodents and pets.

An "effective amount" or a "sufficient amount" of a substance is that amount sufficient to effect beneficial or desired results, including clinical results, and, as such, an "effective amount" depends upon the context in which it is being applied. In the context of administering a composition that modulates an immune response to a co-administered antigen, an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen is an amount sufficient to achieve such a modulation as compared to the immune response obtained when the antigen is administered alone. An effective amount can be administered in one or more administrations.

The term "co-administration" as used herein refers to the administration of at least two different substances sufficiently close in time to modulate an immune response. Preferably, co-administration refers to simultaneous administration of at least two different substances.

"Stimulation" of a response or parameter includes eliciting and/or enhancing that response or parameter. For example, "stimulation" of an immune response, such as Th1 response, means an increase in the response, which can arise from eliciting and/or enhancement of a response. Similarly, "stimulation" of a cytokine or cell type (such as CTLs) means an increase in the amount or level of cytokine or cell type.

An "IgE associated disorder" is a physiological condition which is characterized, in part, by elevated IgE levels, which may or may not be persistent. IgE associated disorders include, but are not limited to, allergy and allergic reactions, allergy-related disorders (described below), asthma, rhinitis, conjunctivitis, urticaria, shock, *Hymenoptera* sting allergies, and drug allergies, and parasite infections. The term also includes related manifestations of these disorders. Generally, IgE in such disorders is antigen-specific.

An "allergy-related disorder" means a disorder resulting from the effects of an antigen-specific IgE immune response. Such effects can include, but are not limited to, hypotension and shock. Anaphylaxis is an example of an allergy-related disorder during which histamine released into the circulation causes vasodilation as well as increased permeability of the capillaries with resultant marked loss of plasma from the circulation.

Anaphylaxis can occur systemically, with the associated effects experienced over the entire body, and it can occur locally, with the reaction limited to a specific target tissue or organ.

The term “viral disease”, as used herein, refers to a disease which has a virus as its etiologic agent. Examples of viral diseases include hepatitis B, hepatitis C, influenza, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), and herpes zoster.

As used herein, and as well-understood in the art, “treatment” is an approach for obtaining beneficial or desired results, including clinical results. For purposes of this invention, beneficial or desired clinical results include, but are not limited to, alleviation or amelioration of one or more symptoms, diminishment of extent of disease, stabilized (*i.e.*, not worsening) state of disease, preventing spread of disease, delay or slowing of disease progression, amelioration or palliation of the disease state, and remission (whether partial or total), whether detectable or undetectable. “Treatment” can also mean prolonging survival as compared to expected survival if not receiving treatment.

“Palliating” a disease or disorder means that the extent and/or undesirable clinical manifestations of a disorder or a disease state are lessened and/or time course of the progression is slowed or lengthened, as compared to not treating the disorder. Especially in the allergy context, as is well understood by those skilled in the art, palliation may occur upon modulation of the immune response against an allergen(s). Further, palliation does not necessarily occur by administration of one dose, but often occurs upon administration of a series of doses. Thus, an amount sufficient to palliate a response or disorder may be administered in one or more administrations.

An “antibody titer”, or “amount of antibody”, which is “elicited” by an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen refers to the amount of a given antibody measured at a time point after administration of immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen.

A “Th1-associated antibody” is an antibody whose production and/or increase is associated with a Th1 immune response. For example, IgG2a is a Th1-associated antibody in mouse. For purposes of this invention, measurement of a Th1-associated antibody can be measurement of one or more such antibodies. For example, in human, measurement of a Th1-associated antibody could entail measurement of IgG1 and/or IgG3.

A “Th2-associated antibody” is an antibody whose production and/or increase is associated with a Th2 immune response. For example, IgG1 is a Th2-associated antibody

in mouse. For purposes of this invention, measurement of a Th2-associated antibody can be measurement of one or more such antibodies. For example, in human, measurement of a Th2-associated antibody could entail measurement of IgG2 and/or IgG4.

To "suppress" or "inhibit" a function or activity, such as cytokine production, antibody production, or histamine release, is to reduce the function or activity when compared to otherwise same conditions except for a condition or parameter of interest, or alternatively, as compared to another condition. For example, a composition comprising an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen which suppresses histamine release reduces histamine release as compared to, for example, histamine release induced by antigen alone. As another example, a composition comprising an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen which suppresses antibody production reduces extent and/or levels of antibody as compared to, for example, extent and/or levels of antibody produced by antigen alone.

As used herein, the term "comprising" and its cognates are used in their inclusive sense; that is, equivalent to the term "including" and its corresponding cognates.

Compositions of the invention

The invention provides immunostimulatory sequences (ISS) and immunomodulatory polynucleotides (IMP) for modulating immune response in individuals. Each immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises at least one immunostimulatory sequence (ISS).

Compositions of the invention comprise an immunomodulatory polynucleotide alone (or a combination of two or more immunomodulatory polynucleotides) or in conjunction with another immunomodulatory agent, such as a peptide, an antigen (described below) and/or an additional adjuvant. Compositions of the invention may comprise an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and pharmaceutically acceptable excipient. Pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, including buffers, are well known in the art.

Remington: The Science and Practice of Pharmacy, 20th edition, Mack Publishing (2000).

Upon administration, compositions comprising an antigen, an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention, and optionally an adjuvant can lead to a potentiation of a immune response to the antigen and thus, can result in an enhanced immune response compared to that which results from a composition comprising the ISS and antigen alone. Adjuvants are known in the art and include, but are not limited to, oil-in-water emulsions,

water-in oil emulsions, alum (aluminum salts), liposomes and microparticles, including but not limited to, polystyrene, starch, polyphosphazene and polylactide/polyglycosides. Other suitable adjuvants also include, but are not limited to, MF59, DETOX™ (Ribi), squalene mixtures (SAF-1), muramyl peptide, saponin derivatives, mycobacterium cell wall preparations, monophosphoryl lipid A, mycolic acid derivatives, nonionic block copolymer surfactants, Quil A, cholera toxin B subunit, polyphosphazene and derivatives, and immunostimulating complexes (ISCOMs) such as those described by Takahashi et al. (1990) *Nature* 344:873-875, as well as, lipid-based adjuvants and others described herein. For veterinary use and for production of antibodies in animals, mitogenic components of Freund's adjuvant (both complete and incomplete) can be used.

ISS-containing polynucleotides of the invention may be combined with other therapies for particular indications. For example, in addition to an ISS-containing polynucleotide, compositions of the invention may also comprise anti-malarial drugs such as chloroquine for malaria patients, leishmanicidal drugs such as pentamidine and/or allopurinol for leishmaniasis patients, anti-mycobacterial drugs such as isoniazid, rifampin and/or ethambutol for tuberculosis patients, or allergen desensitization reagents for atopic (allergy) patients.

As described herein, compositions of the invention may include ISS-containing polynucleotides and may further comprise one or more additional immunotherapeutic agents (*i.e.*, an agent which acts via the immune system and/or is derived from the immune system) including, but not limited to, cytokine, adjuvants and antibodies. Examples of therapeutic antibodies include those used in the cancer context (*e.g.*, anti-tumor antibodies), such as those described below.

Immunomodulatory polynucleotides

In accordance with the present invention, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide contains at least one ISS, and can contain multiple ISSs. The ISSs can be adjacent within the polynucleotide, or they can be separated by additional nucleotide bases within the polynucleotide, or they can be overlapping within the polynucleotide. In certain embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide consists of an ISS.

ISS have been described in the art and may be readily identified using standard assays which indicate various aspects of the immune response, such as cytokine secretion,

antibody production, NK cell activation and T cell proliferation. See, e.g., WO 97/28259; WO 98/16247; WO 99/11275; Krieg et al. (1995) *Nature* 374:546-549; Yamamoto et al. (1992a); Ballas et al. (1996); Klinman et al. (1997); Sato et al. (1996); Pisetsky (1996a); Shimada et al. (1986) *Jpn. J. Cancer Res.* 77:808-816; Cowdery et al. (1996) *J. Immunol.* 156:4570-4575; Roman et al. (1997); Lipford et al. (1997a); WO 98/55495 and WO 00/61151. Accordingly, these and other methods can be used to identify, test and/or confirm immunomodulatory ISS-containing polynucleotides.

The ISS can be of any length greater than 10 bases or base pairs, preferably greater than 15 bases or base pairs, more preferably greater than 20 bases or base pairs in length and generally comprises the sequence 5'-cytosine, guanine-3'.

As is clearly conveyed herein, it is understood that, with respect to formulae described herein, any and all parameters are independently selected. For example, if $x=0-2$, y may be independently selected regardless of the values of x (or any other selectable parameter in a formula).

In some embodiments, an ISS may comprise a 10-mer sequence of the formula:

5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 62)

wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z (Z = 5-bromocytosine), wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U and wherein the ISS is not 5'-TGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 63) or 5'-GGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 64).

In some embodiments, the ISS comprises any of the following sequences:

TGAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 67); TGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 68); TGATCGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 69); TGATCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 70); TGAACGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 71); GTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 72); GTATCGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 73); GTACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 74); GAACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 75); ZGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 76), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine; CGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 77); CGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 78); ZGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 79), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine; TAAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 80); TUAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 81) and TTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 82).

In some embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises the sequence 5'-TCGTCGAACGTTCGTTAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 1).

In other embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises any of the following sequences:

5'-TGAUTGAAACGUTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 2);

5'-TCGTGAUCGUTCGTTAACGUTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 3);

5'-TCGTGAUCGTTCGTUAACGUTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 4);

5'-TCGTGUACGUTCGTTAACGUTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 5);

5 5'-TCGTGAXCGUTCGTTAACGUTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 6), wherein X = 2-amino-adenine;

5'-TGATCGAACGTTCGTTAACGTTCG-3 (SEQ ID NO: 7);

5'-TGAUTGAAACGUTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 8);

5'-TGAUTGACCGTTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 9);

10 5'-TGAUTGTGATCGGTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 10);

5'-TCGTGAACGTTCGTT-3' (SEQ ID NO: 11);

5'-TCGTGTAACGTTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 12);

5'-TCGTCGGTATCGGTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 13);

5'-CTTCGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 14);

15 5'-CTGTGATCGTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 15);

5'-TGAUTGAAACGUTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 16);

5'-TCGTCGGTACCGTTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 17);

5'-TCGTCGGAACCGTTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 18);

5'-TCGTGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 19);

20 5'-TCGTGTAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 20);

5'-TGAUTGACCGTTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 21);

5'-TCGTGAACGTTCGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 22);

5'-TZGTZGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 23), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine;

25 5'-TCGTZGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 24), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine;

5'-TCGTGACCGTTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 25);

5'-TZGTZGACCGTTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 26), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine;

30 5'-TCGTZGACCGTTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 27), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine;

5'-TTCGAACGTTCGTTAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 28);

5'-CTTZGAAACGTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 29), wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine;.

5'-TGATCGTCGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 30);

5'-TCGTCGAACGTTCGAGATGAT-3' (SEQ ID NO: 132).

5

In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention may comprise a 10-mer sequence of the formula:

5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ Z G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 65)

wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine, wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z (Z = 5-bromocytosine), wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U and wherein the ISS is not 5'-TGAAZGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 66; Z = 5-bromocytosine).

10 In some embodiments, the ISS comprises any of the following sequences (where Z is 5-bromocytosine): TGAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 83), TGACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 84), TGATZGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 85), GTATZGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 86),
15 GTACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 87), GAACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 88), GAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 89), ZGACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 90), CGAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 91), ZGAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 92), ZGAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 93), TTAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 94), TUAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 95) and TTAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 96).

20 In some embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises any of the following sequences (where Z is 5-bromocytosine):

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGUTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 31);

5'-TCGTCGAAZGTTCGTTAAZGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 32);

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGUTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 33);

25 5'-TGACTGTGAAZGUTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 34);

5'-TCGTCGGAAAZGUTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 35);

5'-TCGTZGAAZGUTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 36).

30 In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise a 10-mer sequence of the formula:

5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 133)

wherein X₁ is T, C or Z (Z = 5-bromocytosine), wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U, wherein X₃ is

T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U and wherein the formula is not 5'-TGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 63).

In other embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises any of the
5 following sequences (where Z is 5-bromocytosine):

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGTTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 37);

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGTTZGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 38);

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGTTCCAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 39);

5'-TGACTGTGAACGTUCGAGATGA (SEQ ID NO: 40);

10 5'-TGACTGTGAACGXTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 41), wherein X = 5-bromouracil;

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGTTCGTUATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 42);

5'-TGACTGTGAAZGTTCGGTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 43);

5'-CTGTGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 44);

15 5'-TZGTZGTGAACGTTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 45);

5'-TCGTZGTGAACGTTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 46);

5'-TGACTGTGAACGXTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 47), wherein X = 4-thio-thymine;

20 5'-TGACTGTGAACXTTCXAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 48); wherein X = 6-thio-guanine;

5'-TGACTGTGAACGTTCGTUATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 49);

5'-TGACTGTGAACGTTCGTTATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 50);

5'-TCGTTAACGTTCGTTAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 51);

5'-TGATTCAACGTTCGTTAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 52);

25 5'-CTGTCAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 53);

5'-TCGTCGGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 55);

5'-TCGTCGGACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 56);

5'-TCGTCGTACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 57);

5'-TCGTCGTTCGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 58).

30

In some embodiments, with respect to any of the ISS disclosed herein, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide may further comprise one or more TCG and/or T, 5-

bromocytosine, G sequence(s), preferably 5' to the ISS, for example, one or more TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence 5' to the ISS; two or more TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequences 5' to the ISS; or three or more TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequences 5' to the ISS. The TCG(s) and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G(s) may or may not be directly adjacent to the ISS. Examples of these sequences have been provided herein. For example, in some embodiments, an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention may include any of the following: 5'-TCGCGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 97); 5'-TCGTCGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 98); 5'-TZGCGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 99; wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine); 5'-TZGTZGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 100; wherein Z = 5-bromocytosine); 5'-TCGTTAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 101).

In some embodiments, the additional TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) is immediately 5' and adjacent to the ISS, that is, 0 bases separate the TCG or T, 5-bromocytosine, G from the ISS, for example, as in 5'-T, C, G, ISS-3' or 5'-T, 5-bromocytosine, G, ISS-3'. For these embodiments, ISS may be any of the 10-mer formulas described herein. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such sequences include, for example, SEQ ID NOs. 12, 18 and 46.

In other embodiments, one base separates the additional 5' TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) from the ISS, for example, as in 5'-T, C, G, N, ISS-3' or 5'-T, 5-bromocytosine, G, N, ISS-3' (where N = any base). Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such sequences include, for example, SEQ ID NOs. 19, 26 and 27. In other embodiments, two bases separate the additional 5' TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) from the ISS, for example, as in 5'-T, C, G, N, N, ISS-3' or 5'-T, 5-bromocytosine, G, N, N, ISS-3' (where N = any base). For these embodiments, ISS may be any of the 10-mer formulas described herein.

In some embodiments of the immunomodulatory polynucleotides, the additional TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) is created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, 5-bromocytosine to the 5' end of the ISS. For example, in SEQ ID NO: 14, the CG of the additional TCG are the first two bases of the 10mer ISS (5'-CTTCCGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 14)). In another example, the G of the TCG is the first base of the 10mer ISS in SEQ ID NO: 20 (5'-TCGTCGTAAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 20)). For embodiments such as these,

ISS may be one of the 10-mer formulas described herein (e.g., SEQ ID NO: 62, SEQ ID NO: 65 or SEQ ID NO: 133). Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such sequences include, for example, SEQ ID NOS. 14, 19, 20, 36 and 55.

Accordingly, for example, in some embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises a T adjacent to the 5' end of the ISS 10-mer sequence SEQ ID NO: 62, wherein X₁ is C and X₂ is G. See, for example, SEQ ID NO: 19. For example, in other embodiments, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises a TC adjacent to the 5' end of the ISS 10-mer sequence SEQ ID NO: 62, wherein X₁ is G. See, for example, SEQ ID NO: 55.

In certain embodiments where the additional TCG or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence is created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, 5-bromocytosine to the 5'end of the ISS, the additional sequence may create a TCGA or a T, 5-bromocytosine, G, A sequence with the ISS. For example, in SEQ ID NO: 19, the CGA of the additional TCGA are the first three bases of the 10mer ISS (5'-5'-TCGTCGAACGTTCGAGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 19)). In another example, the 5-bromocytosine, G; A of the T, 5-bromocytosine, G, A sequence is the first three bases of the 10mer ISS in SEQ ID NO: 36 (5'-TCGTZGAAZGUTCGGAATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 36)). Accordingly, the invention includes immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising an ISS and a TCGA sequence or T, 5-bromocytosine, G, A sequence at the 5' end of the ISS.

In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide of the invention may comprise the formula:

5'-(TCG)_w N_y A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 126)
wherein w is 1-2, wherein y is 0-2, wherein N is any base, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such ISS sequences include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID Nos. 1, 11, 12, 13, 17, 18, 14, 19, 55, 20, 22, 25, 28 and 30.

In some embodiments, the ISS comprises any of the following sequences:
TCGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 102), TCGTCGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 98),
TCGTGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 103), TCGGTATCGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 104),
TCGGTACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 105), TCGGAACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 106),
TCGGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 107), TCGTCGGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 108),
TCGTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 109), TCGTCGGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 108),

TCGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 110), TCGTCGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 111), TCGTTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 101).

In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise the formula:

5'-(TXG)_z N_y A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 127)

wherein z is 1-2, wherein y is 0-2, wherein X is 5-bromocytosine, wherein N is any base, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such ISS sequences include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID Nos. 45, 23, 26 and 29.

10 In some embodiments, the ISS comprises any of the following sequences (where X is 5-bromocytosine): TXCTGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 112), TXCTXCTGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 113), TXCAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 114), TXCTXCAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 115), TXGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 116), TXCTXCACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 54).

15 In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise the formula:

5'-T C G T X G N_y A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 128)

wherein y is 0-2, wherein X is 5-bromocytosine, wherein N is any base, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such ISS sequences include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID NOs. 46, 24 and 27.

20 In some embodiments, the ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprises any of the following sequences (where X is 5-bromocytosine): TCGTXGTGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 117), TCGTXGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 118), TCGTXGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 119).

25 In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise the formula:

5'-(TCG)_w N_y A X₃ X G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 129)

wherein w is 1-2, wherein y is 0-2, wherein N is any base, wherein X₃ is T, A, or C, wherein X is 5-bromocytosine, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such an ISS include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID NO: 35. In some embodiments, the ISS comprises the sequence TCGGAAAXGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 120) or TCGAAXGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 121), where X is 5-bromocytosine.

In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise the formula:

5'-(TXG)_z N_y A X₃ X G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 130)

wherein z is 1-2, wherein y is 0-2, wherein X is 5-bromocytosine, wherein N is any base, 5 wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. In some embodiments, the ISS comprises the sequence TXGAAXGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 122) or TXGAAXGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 123), where X is 5-bromocytosine.

In some embodiments, an ISS of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise the formula:

10 5'-T C G T X G N_y A X₃ X G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 131)

wherein y is 0-2, wherein X is 5-bromocytosine, wherein N is any base, wherein X₃ is T, A or C, wherein X₄ is T, G or U. Immunomodulatory polynucleotides comprising such an ISS sequence include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID NO: 36. In some embodiments, the ISS comprises the sequence TCGTXGAAXGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 124) or TCGTXGAAXGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 125), where X is 5-bromocytosine.

15 An ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide may contain modifications.

Modifications of ISS include any known in the art, but are not limited to, modifications of the 3'OH or 5'OH group, modifications of the nucleotide base, modifications of the sugar component, and modifications of the phosphate group. Various such modifications are described below.

20 An ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide may be single stranded or double stranded DNA, as well as single or double-stranded RNA or other modified polynucleotides. An ISS may or may not include one or more palindromic regions, which may be present in the decameric motifs described above or may extend beyond the motifs.

25 An ISS may comprise additional flanking sequences, some of which are described herein. An ISS may contain naturally-occurring or modified, non-naturally occurring bases, and may contain modified sugar, phosphate, and/or termini. For example, phosphate modifications include, but are not limited to, methyl phosphonate, phosphorothioate, phosphoramidate (bridging or non-bridging), phosphotriester and phosphorodithioate and may be used in any combination. Other non-phosphate linkages may also be used.

30 Preferably, oligonucleotides of the present invention comprise phosphorothioate backbones. Sugar modifications known in the field, such as 2'-alkoxy-RNA analogs, 2'-

amino-RNA analogs and 2'-alkoxy- or amino-RNA/DNA chimeras and others described herein, may also be made and combined with any phosphate modification. Examples of base modifications (discussed further below) include, but are not limited to, addition of an electron-withdrawing moiety to C-5 and/or C-6 of a cytosine of the ISS (e.g., 5-bromocytosine, 5-chlorocytosine, 5-fluorocytosine, 5-iodocytosine) and C-5 and/or C-6 of a uracil of the ISS (e.g., 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-fluorouracil, 5-iodouracil). See, for example, International Patent Application No. WO 99/62923.

The ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide can be synthesized using techniques and nucleic acid synthesis equipment which are well known in the art including, but not limited to, enzymatic methods, chemical methods, and the degradation of larger oligonucleotide sequences. See, for example, Ausubel et al. (1987); and Sambrook et al. (1989). When assembled enzymatically, the individual units can be ligated, for example, with a ligase such as T4 DNA or RNA ligase. U.S. Patent No. 5,124,246. Oligonucleotide degradation can be accomplished through the exposure of an oligonucleotide to a nuclease, as exemplified in U.S. Patent No. 4,650,675.

The ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide can also be isolated using conventional polynucleotide isolation procedures. Such procedures include, but are not limited to, hybridization of probes to genomic or cDNA libraries to detect shared nucleotide sequences, antibody screening of expression libraries to detect shared structural features and synthesis of particular native sequences by the polymerase chain reaction.

Circular immunomodulatory polynucleotide can be isolated, synthesized through recombinant methods, or chemically synthesized. Where the circular IMP is obtained through isolation or through recombinant methods, the IMP will preferably be a plasmid. The chemical synthesis of smaller circular oligonucleotides can be performed using any method described in the literature. See, for instance, Gao et al. (1995) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 23:2025-2029; and Wang et al. (1994) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 22:2326-2333.

The techniques for making oligonucleotides and modified oligonucleotides are known in the art. Naturally occurring DNA or RNA, containing phosphodiester linkages, is generally synthesized by sequentially coupling the appropriate nucleoside phosphoramidite to the 5'-hydroxy group of the growing oligonucleotide attached to a solid support at the 3'-end, followed by oxidation of the intermediate phosphite triester to a phosphate triester. Once the desired oligonucleotide sequence has been synthesized, the oligonucleotide is

removed from the support, the phosphate triester groups are deprotected to phosphate diesters and the nucleoside bases are deprotected using aqueous ammonia or other bases. See, for example, Beaucage (1993) "Oligodeoxyribonucleotide Synthesis" in Protocols for Oligonucleotides and Analogs, Synthesis and Properties (Agrawal, ed.) Humana Press, Totowa, NJ; Warner et al. (1984) *DNA* 3:401 and U.S. Patent No. 4,458,066.

The ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide can also contain phosphate-modified oligonucleotides, some of which are known to stabilize the polynucleotide. Accordingly, some embodiments includes stabilized immunomodulatory polynucleotides. Synthesis of polynucleotides containing modified phosphate linkages or non-phosphate linkages is also known in the art. For a review, see Matteucci (1997) "Oligonucleotide Analogs: an Overview" in Oligonucleotides as Therapeutic Agents, (D.J. Chadwick and G. Cardew, ed.) John Wiley and Sons, New York, NY. The phosphorous derivative (or modified phosphate group) which can be attached to the sugar or sugar analog moiety in the oligonucleotides of the present invention can be a monophosphate, diphosphate, triphosphate, alkylphosphonate, phosphorothioate, phosphorodithioate, phosphoramidate or the like. The preparation of the above-noted phosphate analogs, and their incorporation into nucleotides, modified nucleotides and oligonucleotides, per se, is also known and need not be described here in detail. Peyrottes et al. (1996) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 24:1841-1848; Chaturvedi et al. (1996) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 24:2318-2323; and Schultz et al. (1996) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 24:2966-2973. For example, synthesis of phosphorothioate oligonucleotides is similar to that described above for naturally occurring oligonucleotides except that the oxidation step is replaced by a sulfurization step (Zon (1993) "Oligonucleoside Phosphorothioates" in Protocols for Oligonucleotides and Analogs, Synthesis and Properties (Agrawal, ed.) Humana Press, pp. 165-190). Similarly the synthesis of other phosphate analogs, such as phosphotriester (Miller et al. (1971) *JACS* 93:6657-6665), non-bridging phosphoramidates (Jager et al. (1988) *Biochem.* 27:7247-7246), N3' to P5' phosphoramidates (Nelson et al. (1997) *JOC* 62:7278-7287) and phosphorodithioates (U.S. Patent No. 5,453,496) has also been described. Other non-phosphorous based modified oligonucleotides can also be used (Stirchak et al. (1989) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 17:6129-6141). Oligonucleotides with phosphorothioate backbones can be more immunogenic than those with phosphodiester backbones and appear to be more resistant to degradation after

injection into the host. Braun et al. (1988) *J. Immunol.* 141:2084-2089; and Latimer et al. (1995) *Mol. Immunol.* 32:1057-1064.

ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotides used in the invention can comprise one or more ribonucleotides (containing ribose as the only or principal sugar component), deoxyribonucleotides (containing deoxyribose as the principal sugar component), or, as is known in the art, modified sugars or sugar analogs can be incorporated in the ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide. Thus, in addition to ribose and deoxyribose, the sugar moiety can be pentose, deoxypentose, hexose, deoxyhexose, glucose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose, and a sugar "analog" cyclopentyl group. The sugar can be in pyranosyl or in a furanosyl form. In the ISS and/or IMP, the sugar moiety is preferably the furanoside of ribose, deoxyribose, arabinose or 2'-0-alkylribose, and the sugar can be attached to the respective heterocyclic bases either in α or β anomeric configuration. Sugar modifications include, but are not limited to, 2'-alkoxy-RNA analogs, 2'-amino-RNA analogs and 2'-alkoxy- or amino-RNA/DNA chimeras. For example, a sugar modification in the ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide includes, but is not limited to, 2'-aminodeoxyadenosine. The preparation of these sugars or sugar analogs and the respective "nucleosides" wherein such sugars or analogs are attached to a heterocyclic base (nucleic acid base) per se is known, and need not be described here, except to the extent such preparation can pertain to any specific example. Sugar modifications may also be made and combined with any phosphate modification in the preparation of an ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide.

The heterocyclic bases, or nucleic acid bases, which are incorporated in the ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide can be the naturally-occurring principal purine and pyrimidine bases, (namely uracil, thymine, cytosine, adenine and guanine, as mentioned above), as well as naturally-occurring and synthetic modifications of said principal bases.

Those skilled in the art will recognize that a large number of "synthetic" non-natural nucleosides comprising various heterocyclic bases and various sugar moieties (and sugar analogs) are available in the art, and that as long as other criteria of the present invention are satisfied, the ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide can include one or several heterocyclic bases other than the principal five base components of naturally-occurring nucleic acids. Preferably, however, the heterocyclic base in the ISS and/or IMP

includes, but is not limited to, uracil-5-yl, cytosin-5-yl, adenin-7-yl, adenin-8-yl, guanin-7-yl, guanin-8-yl, 4-aminopyrrolo [2.3-d] pyrimidin-5-yl, 2-amino-4-oxopyrrolo [2,3-d] pyrimidin-5-yl, 2-amino-4-oxopyrrolo [2.3-d] pyrimidin-3-yl groups, where the purines are attached to the sugar moiety of the ISS and/or IMP via the 9-position, the pyrimidines via
5 the 1-position, the pyrrolopyrimidines via the 7-position and the pyrazolopyrimidines via the 1-position.

The ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide may comprise at least one modified base. As used herein, the term "modified base" is synonymous with "base analog", for example, "modified cytosine" is synonymous with "cytosine analog."

10 Similarly, "modified" nucleosides or nucleotides are herein defined as being synonymous with nucleoside or nucleotide "analogs." Examples of base modifications include, but are not limited to, addition of an electron-withdrawing moiety to C-5 and/or C-6 of a cytosine of the ISS and/or IMP. Preferably, the electron-withdrawing moiety is a halogen. Such modified cytosines can include, but are not limited to, azacytosine, 5-bromocytosine, bromouracil, 5-chlorocytosine, chlorinated cytosine, cyclocytosine, cytosine arabinoside, 5-fluorocytosine, fluoropyrimidine, fluorouracil, 5,6-dihydrocytosine, 5-iodocytosine, hydroxyurea, iodouracil, 5-nitrocytosine, uracil, and any other pyrimidine analog or modified pyrimidine. Other examples of base modifications include, but are not limited to, addition of an electron-withdrawing moiety to C-5 and/or C-6 of a uracil of the ISS and/or immunomodulatory polynucleotide. Preferably, the electron-withdrawing moiety is a halogen. Such modified uracils can include, but are not limited to, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-fluorouracil, 5-iodouracil.

20 Other examples of base modifications include the addition of one or more thiol groups to the base including, but not limited to, 6-thio-guanine, 4-thio-thymine and 4-thio-uracil.

25 It is preferred that cytosines of CG motifs present in the ISS are not methylated, although other modifications and/or additions are contemplated. However, in certain embodiments the ISS may contain one or more methylated cytosines. In such embodiments it is preferred that the cytosines of the 10mer ISS sequence (*i.e.*, the C of the CG and/or the TCG portions of the formulae described herein, e.g., SEQ ID NOs: 62, 65, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131 and 133) is not methylated at position C5. However, methylation at position N4 is contemplated in those ISSs comprising methylated cytosines.

The preparation of base-modified nucleosides, and the synthesis of modified oligonucleotides using said base-modified nucleosides as precursors, has been described, for example, in U.S. Patents 4,910,300, 4,948,882, and 5,093,232. These base-modified nucleosides have been designed so that they can be incorporated by chemical synthesis into either terminal or internal positions of an oligonucleotide. Such base-modified nucleosides, present at either terminal or internal positions of an oligonucleotide, can serve as sites for attachment of a peptide or other antigen. Nucleosides modified in their sugar moiety have also been described (including, but not limited to, e.g., U.S. Patents 4,849,513, 5,015,733, 5,118,800, 5,118,802) and can be used similarly.

In some embodiments, an immunomodulatory polynucleotide is less than about any of the following lengths (in bases or base pairs): 10,000; 5,000; 2500; 2000; 1500; 1250; 1000; 750; 500; 300; 250; 200; 175; 150; 125; 100; 75; 50; 25; 10. In some embodiments, an immunomodulatory polynucleotide is greater than about any of the following lengths (in bases or base pairs): 10; 15; 20; 25; 30; 40; 50; 60; 75; 100; 125; 150; 175; 200; 250; 300; 350; 400; 500; 750; 1000; 2000; 5000; 7500; 10000; 20000; 50000. Alternately, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide can be any of a range of sizes having an upper limit of 10,000; 5,000; 2500; 2000; 1500; 1250; 1000; 750; 500; 300; 250; 200; 175; 150; 125; 100; 75; 50; 25; or 10 and an independently selected lower limit of 10; 15; 20; 25; 30; 40; 50; 60; 75; 100; 125; 150; 175; 200; 250; 300; 350; 400; 500; 750; 1000; 2000; 5000; 7500, wherein the lower limit is less than the upper limit.

The invention also provides methods of making the immunomodulatory polynucleotides described herein. The methods may be any of those described herein. For example, the method could be synthesizing the ISS-containing polynucleotide (for example, using solid state synthesis) and may further comprise any purification step(s). Methods of purification are known in the art. Other methods of preparation include combining an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and an antigen.

Antigen

Any antigen may be co-administered with an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and/or used in compositions comprising an immunomodulatory polynucleotide and antigen (and preparation of these compositions).

In some embodiments, the antigen is an allergen. Examples of recombinant allergens are provided in Table 1. Preparation of many allergens is well-known in the art, including, but not limited to, preparation of ragweed pollen allergen Antigen E (Amb a I) (Rafnar et al. (1991) *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:1229-1236), grass allergen Lol p 1 (Tamborini et al. (1997) *Eur. J. Biochem.* 249:886-894), major dust mite allergens Der pI and Der PII (Chua et al. (1988) *J. Exp. Med.* 167:175-182; Chua et al. (1990) *Int. Arch. Allergy Appl. Immunol.* 91:124-129), domestic cat allergen Fel d I (Rogers et al. (1993) *Mol. Immunol.* 30:559-568), white birch pollen Bet v1 (Breiteneder et al. (1989) *EMBO J.* 8:1935-1938), Japanese cedar allergens Cry j 1 and Cry j 2 (Kingetsu et al. (2000) *Immunology* 99:625-629), and protein antigens from other tree pollen (Elsayed et al. (1991) *Scand. J. Clin. Lab. Invest. Suppl.* 204:17-31). As indicated, allergens from trees are known, including allergens from birch, juniper and Japanese cedar. Preparation of protein antigens from grass pollen for *in vivo* administration has been reported.

In some embodiments, the allergen is a food allergen, including, but not limited to, peanut allergen, for example Ara h I (Stanley et al. (1996) *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.* 409:213-216); walnut allergen, for example, Jug r I (Tueber et al. (1998) *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 101:807-814); brazil nut allergen, for example, albumin (Pastorello et al. (1998) *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* 102:1021-1027; shrimp allergen, for example, Pen a I (Reese et al. (1997) *Int. Arch. Allergy Immunol.* 113:240-242); egg allergen, for example, ovomucoid (Crooke et al. (1997) *J. Immunol.* 159:2026-2032); milk allergen, for example, bovine β -lactoglobulin (Selot et al. (1999) *Clin. Exp. Allergy* 29:1055-1063); fish allergen, for example, parvalbumins (Van Do et al. (1999) *Scand. J. Immunol.* 50:619-625; Galland et al. (1998) *J. Chromatogr. B. Biomed. Sci. Appl.* 706:63-71). In some embodiments, the allergen is a latex allergen, including but not limited to, Hev b 7 (Sowka et al. (1998) *Eur. J. Biochem.* 255:213-219). Table 1 shows an exemplary list of allergens that may be used.

TABLE 1
RECOMBINANT ALLERGENS

| Group | Allergen | Reference |
|------------------|--|---|
| ANIMALS: | | |
| CRUSTACEA | | |
| Shrimp/lobster | tropomyosin Pan s I | Leung et al. (1996) J. Allergy Clin. Immunol. 98:954-961 Leung et al. (1998) Mol. Mar. Biol. Biotechnol. 7:12-20 |
| INSECTS | | |
| Ant | Sol i 2 (venom) | Schmidt et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol., 1996, 98:82-8 |
| Bee | Phospholipase A2 (PLA) Hyaluronidase (Hya) | Muller et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1995, 96:395-402 Forster et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1995, 95:1229-35 Muller et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1997, 27:915-20 Soldatova et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:691-8 |
| Cockroach | Bla g Bd9OK Bla g 4 (a calycin) Glutathione S-transferase Per a 3 | Helm et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1996, 98:172-180 Vailes et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:274-280 Arruda et al. J Biol Chem, 1997, 272:20907-12 Wu et al. Mol Immunol, 1997, 34:1-8 |
| Dust mite | Der p 2 (major allergen) Der p2 variant Der f2 Der p10 Tyr p 2 | Lynch et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:562-4 Hakkaart et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1998, 28:169-74 Hakkaart et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1998, 28:45-52 Hakkaart et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1998, 115 (2):150-6 Mueller et al. J Biol Chem, 1997, 272:26893-8 Smith et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:423-5 Yasue et al. Clin Exp Immunol, 1998, 113:1-9 Yasue et al. Cell Immunol, 1997, 181:30-7 Asturias et al. Biochim Biophys Acta, 1998, 1397:27-30 Eriksson et al. Eur J Biochem, 1998 |
| Hornet | Antigen 5 aka Dol m V (venom) | Tomalski et al. Arch Insect Biochem Physiol, 1993, 22:303-13 |
| Mosquito | Aed a I (salivary apyrase) | Xu et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1998, 115:245-51 |
| Yellow jacket | antigen 5, hyaluronidase and phospholipase (venom) | King et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1996, 98:588-600 |
| MAMMALS | | |
| Cat | Fel d I | Slunt et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1995, 95:1221-8 |

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|--|
| | | Hoffmann et al. (1997) J Allergy Clin Immunol 99:227-32 Hedlin Curr Opin Pediatr, 1995, 7:676-82 |
| Cow | Bos d 2 (dander; a lipocalin) | Zeiler et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:721-7 Rautiainen et al. Biochem Bioph. Res Comm., 1998, 247:746-50 |
| | β-lactoglobulin (BLG, major cow milk allergen) | Chatel et al. Mol Immunol, 1996, 33:1113-8 Lehrer et al. Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr, 1996, 36:553-64 |
| Dog | Can f 1 and Can f 2, salivary lipocalins | Konieczny et al. Immunology, 1997, 92:577-86 Spitzauer et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1994, 93:614-27 Vrtala et al. J Immunol, 1998, 160:6137-44 |
| Horse | Equ c1 (major allergen, a lipocalin) | Gregoire et al. J Biol Chem, 1996, 271:32951-9 |
| Mouse | mouse urinary protein (MUP) | Konieczny et al. Immunology, 1997, 92:577-86 |
| OTHER MAMMALIAN ALLERGENS | | |
| Insulin | | Ganz et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol , 1990, 86:45-51 Grammer et al. J Lab Clin Med, 1987, 109:141-6 Gonzalo et al. Allergy, 1998, 53:106-7 |
| Interferons | interferon alpha 2c | Detmar et al. Contact Dermatis, 1989, 20:149-50 |
| MOLLUSCS | topomyosin | Leung et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1996, 98:954-61 |
| PLANT ALLERGENS: | | |
| Barley | Hor v 9 | Astwood et al. Adv Exp Med Biol, 1996, 409:269-77 |
| Birch | pollen allergen, Bet v 4 | Twardosz et al. Biochem Bioph. Res Comm., 1997, 23:9:197 |
| | rBet v 1 Bet v 2: (profilin) | Pauli et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1996, 97:1100-9 van Neerven et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1998, 28:423-33 Jahn-Schmid et al. Immunotechnology, 1996, 2:103-13 Breitwieser et al. Biotechniques, 1996, 21:918-25 Fuchs et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:3 56-64 |
| Brazil nut | globulin | Bartolome et al. Allergol Immunopathol, 1997, 25:135-44 |
| Cherry | Pru a I (major allergen) | Scheurer et al. Mol Immunol, 1997, 34:619-29 |
| Corn | Zml3 (pollen) | Heiss et al. FEBS Lett, 1996, 381:217-21 Lehrer et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1997, 113:122-4 |
| Grass | Phl p 1, Phl p 2, Phl p 5 (timothy grass pollen) | Bufe et al. Am J Respir Crit Care Med, 1998, 157:1269-76 Vrtala et al. J Immunol Jun 15, 1998, 160:6137-44 Niederberger et al. J Allergy Clin Immun., 1998, 101:258-64 |
| | Hol 1 5 velvet grass pollen | Schramm et al. Eur J Biochem, 1998, 252:200-6 |
| | Bluegrass allergen | Zhang et al. J Immunol, 1993, 151:791-9 |
| | Cyn d 7 Bermuda grass | Smith et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1997, 114:265-71 |

| | | |
|---------------------|---|---|
| | Cyn d 12 (a profilin) | Asturias et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1997, 27:1307-13 Fuchs et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:356-64 |
| Japanese Cedar | Jun a 2 (<i>Juniperus ashei</i>) | Yokoyama et al. Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun., 2000, 275:195-202 |
| | Cry j 1, Cry j 2 (<i>Cryptomeria japonica</i>) | Kingetsu et al. Immunology, 2000, 99:625-629 |
| Juniper | Jun o 2 (pollen) | Tinghino et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:772-7 |
| Latex | Hev b 7 | Sowka et al. Eur J Biochem, 1998, 255:213-9 Fuchs et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:3 56-64 |
| Mercurialis | Mer a I (profilin) | Vallverdu et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:3 63-70 |
| Mustard (Yellow) | Sin a I (seed) | Gonzalez de la Pena et al. Biochem Bioph. Res Comm., 1993, 190:648-53 |
| Oilseed rape | Bra r I pollen allergen | Smith et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1997, 114:265-71 |
| Peanut | Ara h I | Stanley et al. Adv Exp Med Biol, 1996, 409:213-6 Burks et al. J Clin Invest, 1995, 96:1715-21 Burks et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1995, 107:248-50 |
| Poa pratensis | Poa p9 | Parronchi et al. Eur J Immunol, 1996, 26:697-703 Astwood et al. Adv Exp Med Biol, 1996, 409:269-77 |
| Ragweed | Amb a I | Sun et al. Biotechnology Aug, 1995, 13:779-86 Hirschwehr et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1998, 101:196-206 Casale et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:110-21 |
| Rye | Lol p I | Tamborini et al. Eur J Biochem, 1997, 249:886-94 |
| Walnut | Jug r I | Teuber et al. J Allergy Clin Immun., 1998, 101:807-14 |
| Wheat | allergen | Fuchs et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 100:356-64 Donovan et al. Electrophoresis, 1993, 14:917-22 |
| FUNGI: | | |
| Aspergillus | Asp f 1, Asp f 2, Asp f3, Asp f 4, rAsp f 6 | Crameri et al. Mycoses, 1998, 41 Suppl 1:56-60 Hemmann et al. Eur J Immunol, 1998, 28:1155-60 Banerjee et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1997, 99:821-7 Crameri Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1998, 115:99-114 Crameri et al. Adv Exp Med Biol, 1996, 409:111-6 Moser et al. J Allergy Clin Immunol, 1994, 93: 1-11 |
| | Manganese superoxide dismutase (MNSOD) | Mayer et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1997, 113:213-5 |
| Blomia | allergen | Caraballo et al. Adv Exp Med Biol, 1996, 409:81-3 |
| Penicillium | allergen | Shen et al. Clin Exp Allergy, 1997, 27:682-90 |
| Psilocybe | Psi c 2 | Horner et al. Int Arch Allergy Immunol, 1995, 107:298-300 |

In some embodiments, the antigen is from an infectious agent, including protozoan, bacterial, fungal (including unicellular and multicellular), and viral infectious agents.

Examples of suitable viral antigens are described herein and are known in the art. Bacteria include *Hemophilus influenza*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *Bordetella pertussis*.

Protozoan infectious agents include malarial plasmodia, *Leishmania* species, *Trypanosoma* species and *Schistosoma* species. Fungi include *Candida albicans*.

5 In some embodiments, the antigen is a viral antigen. Viral polypeptide antigens include, but are not limited to, HIV proteins such as HIV gag proteins (including, but not limited to, membrane anchoring (MA) protein, core capsid (CA) protein and nucleocapsid (NC) protein), HIV polymerase, influenza virus matrix (M) protein and influenza virus nucleocapsid (NP) protein, hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), hepatitis B core protein (HBcAg), hepatitis e protein (HBeAg), hepatitis B DNA polymerase, hepatitis C antigens, and the like. References discussing influenza vaccination include Scherle and Gerhard (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85:4446-4450; Scherle and Gerhard (1986) *J. Exp. Med.* 164:1114-1128; Granoff et al. (1993) *Vaccine* 11:S46-51; Kodihalli et al. (1997) *J. Virol.* 71:3391-3396; Ahmeida et al. (1993) *Vaccine* 11:1302-1309; Chen et al. (1999) *Vaccine* 17:653-659; Govorkova and Smirnov (1997) *Acta Virol.* (1997) 41:251-257; Koide et al. (1995) *Vaccine* 13:3-5; Mbawuike et al. (1994) *Vaccine* 12:1340-1348; Tamura et al. (1994) *Vaccine* 12:310-316; Tamura et al. (1992) *Eur. J. Immunol.* 22:477-481; Hirabayashi et al. (1990) *Vaccine* 8:595-599. Other examples of antigen polypeptides are group- or sub-group specific antigens, which are known for a number of infectious agents, including, but not limited to, adenovirus, herpes simplex virus, papilloma virus, respiratory syncytial virus and poxviruses.

20 As shown in Example 3 below, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotides in conjunction with a hepatitis virus antigen, hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), resulted in increased titers of anti-HBsAg antibodies in primates as compared to administration of HBsAg alone.

25 Many antigenic peptides and proteins are known, and available in the art; others can be identified using conventional techniques. For immunization against tumor formation or treatment of existing tumors, immunomodulatory peptides can include tumor cells (live or irradiated), tumor cell extracts, or protein subunits of tumor antigens such as Her-2/neu, Mart1, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), gangliosides, human milk fat globule (HMFG), mucin (MUC1), MAGE antigens, BAGE antigens, GAGE antigens, gp100, prostate specific antigen (PSA), and tyrosinase. Vaccines for immuno-based contraception can be

formed by including sperm proteins administered with ISS. Lea et al. (1996) *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1307:263.

Attenuated and inactivated viruses are suitable for use herein as the antigen.

Preparation of these viruses is well-known in the art and many are commercially available (see, e.g., Physicians' Desk Reference (1998) 52nd edition, Medical Economics Company, Inc.). For example, polio virus is available as IPOL® (Pasteur Merieux Connaught) and ORIMUNE® (Lederle Laboratories), hepatitis A virus as VAQTA® (Merck), measles virus as ATTENUVAX® (Merck), mumps virus as MUMPSVAX® (Merck) and rubella virus as MERUVAX®II (Merck). Additionally, attenuated and inactivated viruses such as HIV-1, HIV-2, herpes simplex virus, hepatitis B virus, rotavirus, human and non-human papillomavirus and slow brain viruses can provide peptide antigens.

In some embodiments, the antigen comprises a viral vector, such as vaccinia, adenovirus, and canary pox.

Antigens may be isolated from their source using purification techniques known in the art or, more conveniently, may be produced using recombinant methods.

Antigenic peptides can include purified native peptides, synthetic peptides, recombinant proteins, crude protein extracts, attenuated or inactivated viruses, cells, micro-organisms, or fragments of such peptides. Immunomodulatory peptides can be native or synthesized chemically or enzymatically. Any method of chemical synthesis known in the art is suitable. Solution phase peptide synthesis can be used to construct peptides of moderate size or, for the chemical construction of peptides, solid phase synthesis can be employed. Atherton et al. (1981) *Hoppe Seylers Z. Physiol. Chem.* 362:833-839.

Proteolytic enzymes can also be utilized to couple amino acids to produce peptides.

Kullmann (1987) Enzymatic Peptide Synthesis, CRC Press, Inc. Alternatively, the peptide can be obtained by using the biochemical machinery of a cell, or by isolation from a biological source. Recombinant DNA techniques can be employed for the production of peptides. Hames et al. (1987) Transcription and Translation: A Practical Approach, IRL Press. Peptides can also be isolated using standard techniques such as affinity chromatography.

Preferably the antigens are peptides, lipids (e.g., sterols excluding cholesterol, fatty acids, and phospholipids), polysaccharides such as those used in *H. influenza* vaccines, gangliosides and glycoproteins. These can be obtained through several methods known in

the art, including isolation and synthesis using chemical and enzymatic methods. In certain cases, such as for many sterols, fatty acids and phospholipids, the antigenic portions of the molecules are commercially available.

Examples of viral antigens useful in the subject compositions and methods using the compositions include, but are not limited to, HIV antigens. Such antigens include, but are not limited to, those antigens derived from HIV envelope glycoproteins including, but not limited to, gp160, gp120 and gp41. Numerous sequences for HIV genes and antigens are known. For example, the Los Alamos National Laboratory HIV Sequence Database collects, curates and annotates HIV nucleotide and amino acid sequences. This database is accessible via the internet, at <http://hiv-web.lanl.gov/>, and in a yearly publication, see Human Retroviruses and AIDS Compendium (for example, 2000 edition).

Antigens derived from infectious agents may be obtained using methods known in the art, for example, from native viral or bacterial extracts, from cells infected with the infectious agent, from purified polypeptides, from recombinantly produced polypeptides and/or as synthetic peptides.

ISS-Antigen

When used with antigen, ISS may be administered with antigen in a number of ways. In some embodiments, an ISS-containing polynucleotide and antigen may be administered spatially proximate with respect to each other, or as an admixture (*i.e.*, in solution). As described below, spatial proximation can be accomplished in a number of ways, including conjugation (linkage), encapsidation, via affixation to a platform or adsorption onto a surface. Generally, and most preferably, an ISS-containing polynucleotide and antigen are proximately associated at a distance effective to enhance the immune response generated compared to the administration of the ISS and the antigen as an admixture.

In some embodiments, the ISS-containing polynucleotide is conjugated with the antigen. The ISS portion can be coupled with the antigen portion of a conjugate in a variety of ways, including covalent and/or non-covalent interactions.

The link between the portions can be made at the 3' or 5' end of the ISS, or at a suitably modified base at an internal position in the ISS. If the antigen is a peptide and contains a suitable reactive group (e.g., an N-hydroxysuccinimide ester) it can be reacted

directly with the N⁴ amino group of cytosine residues. Depending on the number and location of cytosine residues in the ISS, specific coupling at one or more residues can be achieved.

5 Alternatively, modified oligonucleosides, such as are known in the art, can be incorporated at either terminus, or at internal positions in the ISS. These can contain blocked functional groups which, when deblocked, are reactive with a variety of functional groups which can be present on, or attached to, the antigen of interest.

10 Where the antigen is a peptide or polypeptide, this portion of the conjugate can be attached to the 3'-end of the ISS through solid support chemistry. For example, the ISS portion can be added to a polypeptide portion that has been pre-synthesized on a support.

15 Haralambidis et al. (1990a) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 18:493-499; and Haralambidis et al. (1990b) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 18:501-505. Alternatively, the ISS can be synthesized such that it is connected to a solid support through a cleavable linker extending from the 3'-end. Upon chemical cleavage of the ISS from the support, a terminal thiol group is left at the 3'-end of the oligonucleotide (Zuckermann et al. (1987) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 15:5305-5321; and Corey et al. (1987) *Science* 238:1401-1403) or a terminal amino group is left at the 3'-end of the oligonucleotide (Nelson et al. (1989) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 17:1781-1794). Conjugation of the amino-modified ISS to amino groups of the peptide can be performed as described in Benoit et al. (1987) *Neuromethods* 6:43-72. Conjugation of the thiol-modified ISS to 20 carboxyl groups of the peptide can be performed as described in Sinah et al. (1991) *Oligonucleotide Analogues: A Practical Approach*, IRL Press. Coupling of an oligonucleotide carrying an appended maleimide to the thiol side chain of a cysteine residue of a peptide has also been described. Tung et al. (1991) *Bioconjug. Chem.* 2:464-465.

25 The peptide or polypeptide portion of the conjugate can be attached to the 5'-end of the ISS through an amine, thiol, or carboxyl group that has been incorporated into the oligonucleotide during its synthesis. Preferably, while the oligonucleotide is fixed to the solid support, a linking group comprising a protected amine, thiol, or carboxyl at one end, and a phosphoramidite at the other, is covalently attached to the 5'-hydroxyl. Agrawal et al. (1986) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 14:6227-6245; Connolly (1985) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 13:4485-4502; Kremsky et al. (1987) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 15:2891-2909; Connolly (1987) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 15:3131-3139; Bischoff et al. (1987) *Anal. Biochem.* 164:336-344; Blanks et al.

(1988) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 16:10283-10299; and U.S. Patent Nos. 4,849,513, 5,015,733, 5,118,800, and 5,118,802. Subsequent to deprotection, the amine, thiol, and carboxyl functionalities can be used to covalently attach the oligonucleotide to a peptide. Benoit et al. (1987); and Sinah et al. (1991).

5 An ISS-antigen conjugate can also be formed through non-covalent interactions, such as ionic bonds, hydrophobic interactions, hydrogen bonds and/or van der Waals attractions.

10 Non-covalently linked conjugates can include a non-covalent interaction such as a biotin-streptavidin complex. A biotinyl group can be attached, for example, to a modified base of an ISS. Roget et al. (1989) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 17:7643-7651. Incorporation of a streptavidin moiety into the peptide portion allows formation of a non-covalently bound complex of the streptavidin conjugated peptide and the biotinylated oligonucleotide.

15 Non-covalent associations can also occur through ionic interactions involving an ISS and residues within the antigen, such as charged amino acids, or through the use of a linker portion comprising charged residues that can interact with both the oligonucleotide and the antigen. For example, non-covalent conjugation can occur between a generally negatively-charged ISS and positively-charged amino acid residues of a peptide, e.g., polylysine, polyarginine and polyhistidine residues.

20 Non-covalent conjugation between ISS and antigens can occur through DNA binding motifs of molecules that interact with DNA as their natural ligands. For example, such DNA binding motifs can be found in transcription factors and anti-DNA antibodies.

25 The linkage of the ISS to a lipid can be formed using standard methods. These methods include, but are not limited to, the synthesis of oligonucleotide-phospholipid conjugates (Yanagawa et al. (1988) *Nucleic Acids Symp. Ser.* 19:189-192), oligonucleotide-fatty acid conjugates (Grabarek et al. (1990) *Anal. Biochem.* 185:131-135; and Staros et al. (1986) *Anal. Biochem.* 156:220-222), and oligonucleotide-sterol conjugates. Boujrad et al. (1993) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 90:5728-5731.

30 The linkage of the oligonucleotide to an oligosaccharide can be formed using standard known methods. These methods include, but are not limited to, the synthesis of oligonucleotide-oligosaccharide conjugates, wherein the oligosaccharide is a moiety of an immunoglobulin. O'Shannessy et al. (1985) *J. Applied Biochem.* 7:347-355.

The linkage of a circular ISS to a peptide or antigen can be formed in several ways. Where the circular ISS is synthesized using recombinant or chemical methods, a modified nucleoside is suitable. Ruth (1991) in *Oligonucleotides and Analogues: A Practical Approach*, IRL Press. Standard linking technology can then be used to connect the circular ISS to the antigen or other peptide. Goodchild (1990) *Bioconjug. Chem.* 1:165. Where the circular ISS is isolated, or synthesized using recombinant or chemical methods, the linkage can be formed by chemically activating, or photoactivating, a reactive group (e.g. carbene, radical) that has been incorporated into the antigen or other peptide.

Additional methods for the attachment of peptides and other molecules to oligonucleotides can be found in U.S. Patent No. 5,391,723; Kessler (1992) "Nonradioactive labeling methods for nucleic acids" in Kricka (ed.) *Nonisotopic DNA Probe Techniques*, Academic Press; and Geoghegan et al. (1992) *Bioconjug. Chem.* 3:138-146.

An ISS may be proximately associated with an antigen(s) in other ways. In some embodiments, an ISS and antigen are proximately associated by encapsulation. In other embodiments, an ISS and antigen are proximately associated by linkage to a platform molecule. A "platform molecule" (also termed "platform") is a molecule containing sites which allow for attachment of the ISS and antigen(s). In other embodiments, an ISS and antigen are proximately associated by adsorption onto a surface, preferably a carrier particle.

In some embodiments, the methods of the invention employ an encapsulating agent that can maintain the proximate association of the ISS and first antigen until the complex is available to the target (or compositions comprising such encapsulating agents). Preferably, the composition comprising ISS, antigen and encapsulating agent is in the form of adjuvant oil-in-water emulsions, microparticles and/or liposomes. More preferably, adjuvant oil-in-water emulsions, microparticles and/or liposomes encapsulating an ISS-immunomodulatory molecule are in the form of particles from about 0.04 μm to about 100 μm in size, preferably any of the following ranges: from about 0.1 μm to about 20 μm; from about 0.15 μm to about 10 μm; from about 0.05 μm to about 1.00 μm; from about 0.05 μm to about 0.5 μm.

Colloidal dispersion systems, such as microspheres, beads, macromolecular complexes, nanocapsules and lipid-based system, such as oil-in-water emulsions, micelles,

mixed micelles and liposomes can provide effective encapsulation of ISS-containing compositions.

The encapsulation composition further comprises any of a wide variety of components. These include, but are not limited to, alum, lipids, phospholipids, lipid membrane structures (LMS), polyethylene glycol (PEG) and other polymers, such as 5 polypeptides, glycopeptides, and polysaccharides.

Polypeptides suitable for encapsulation components include any known in the art and include, but are not limited to, fatty acid binding proteins. Modified polypeptides contain any of a variety of modifications, including, but not limited to glycosylation, phosphorylation, myristylation, sulfation and hydroxylation. As used herein, a suitable 10 polypeptide is one that will protect an ISS-containing composition to preserve the immunomodulatory activity thereof. Examples of binding proteins include, but are not limited to, albumins such as bovine serum albumin (BSA) and pea albumin.

Other suitable polymers can be any known in the art of pharmaceuticals and 15 include, but are not limited to, naturally-occurring polymers such as dextrans, hydroxyethyl starch, and polysaccharides, and synthetic polymers. Examples of naturally occurring polymers include proteins, glycopeptides, polysaccharides, dextran and lipids. The additional polymer can be a synthetic polymer. Examples of synthetic polymers which are suitable for use in the present invention include, but are not limited to, polyalkyl glycols 20 (PAG) such as PEG, polyoxyethylated polyols (POP), such as polyoxyethylated glycerol (POG), polytrimethylene glycol (PTG) polypropylene glycol (PPG), polyhydroxyethyl methacrylate, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), polyacrylic acid, polyethyloxazoline, polyacrylamide, polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), polyamino acids, polyurethane and 25 polyphosphazene. The synthetic polymers can also be linear or branched, substituted or unsubstituted, homopolymeric, co-polymers, or block co-polymers of two or more different synthetic monomers.

The PEGs for use in encapsulation compositions of the present invention are either purchased from chemical suppliers or synthesized using techniques known to those of skill in the art.

The term "LMS", as used herein, means lamellar lipid particles wherein polar head groups of a polar lipid are arranged to face an aqueous phase of an interface to form 30 membrane structures. Examples of the LMSs include liposomes, micelles, cochleates (*i.e.*,

generally cylindrical liposomes), microemulsions, unilamellar vesicles, multilamellar vesicles, and the like.

A preferred colloidal dispersion system of this invention is a liposome. In mice immunized with a liposome-encapsulated antigen, liposomes appeared to enhance a Th1-type immune response to the antigen. Aramaki et al. (1995) *Vaccine* 13:1809-1814. As used herein, a "liposome" or "lipid vesicle" is a small vesicle bounded by at least one and possibly more than one bilayer lipid membrane. Liposomes are made artificially from phospholipids, glycolipids, lipids, steroids such as cholesterol, related molecules, or a combination thereof by any technique known in the art, including but not limited to sonication, extrusion, or removal of detergent from lipid-detergent complexes. A liposome can also optionally comprise additional components, such as a tissue targeting component. It is understood that a "lipid membrane" or "lipid bilayer" need not consist exclusively of lipids, but can additionally contain any suitable other components, including, but not limited to, cholesterol and other steroids, lipid-soluble chemicals, proteins of any length, and other amphipathic molecules, providing the general structure of the membrane is a sheet of two hydrophilic surfaces sandwiching a hydrophobic core. For a general discussion of membrane structure, see *The Encyclopedia of Molecular Biology* by J. Kendrew (1994). For suitable lipids see e.g., Lasic (1993) "Liposomes: from Physics to Applications" Elsevier, Amsterdam.

Processes for preparing liposomes containing ISS-containing compositions are known in the art. The lipid vesicles can be prepared by any suitable technique known in the art. Methods include, but are not limited to, microencapsulation, microfluidization, LLC method, ethanol injection, freon injection, the "bubble" method, detergent dialysis, hydration, sonication, and reverse-phase evaporation. Reviewed in Watwe et al. (1995) *Curr. Sci.* 68:715-724. Techniques may be combined in order to provide vesicles with the most desirable attributes.

The invention encompasses use of LMSs containing tissue or cellular targeting components. Such targeting components are components of a LMS that enhance its accumulation at certain tissue or cellular sites in preference to other tissue or cellular sites when administered to an intact animal, organ, or cell culture. A targeting component is generally accessible from outside the liposome, and is therefore preferably either bound to the outer surface or inserted into the outer lipid bilayer. A targeting component can be

inter alia a peptide, a region of a larger peptide, an antibody specific for a cell surface molecule or marker, or antigen binding fragment thereof, a nucleic acid, a carbohydrate, a region of a complex carbohydrate, a special lipid, or a small molecule such as a drug, hormone, or hapten, attached to any of the aforementioned molecules. Antibodies with specificity toward cell type-specific cell surface markers are known in the art and are readily prepared by methods known in the art.

The LMSs can be targeted to any cell type toward which a therapeutic treatment is to be directed, e.g., a cell type which can modulate and/or participate in an immune response. Such target cells and organs include, but are not limited to, APCs, such as 10 macrophages, dendritic cells and lymphocytes, lymphatic structures, such as lymph nodes and the spleen, and nonlymphatic structures, particularly those in which dendritic cells are found.

The LMS compositions of the present invention can additionally comprise surfactants. Surfactants can be cationic, anionic, amphiphilic, or nonionic. A preferred 15 class of surfactants are nonionic surfactants; particularly preferred are those that are water soluble.

In embodiments in which an ISS and antigen are proximately associated by linkage to a platform molecule, the platform may be proteinaceous or non-proteinaceous (*i.e.*, organic). Examples of proteinaceous platforms include, but are not limited to, albumin, 20 gammaglobulin, immunoglobulin (IgG) and ovalbumin. Borel et al. (1990) *Immunol. Methods* 126:159-168; Dumas et al. (1995) *Arch. Dermatol. Res.* 287:123-128; Borel et al. (1995) *Int. Arch. Allergy Immunol.* 107:264-267; Borel et al. (1996) *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 778:80-87. A platform is multi-valent (*i.e.*, contains more than one binding, or linking, site) to accommodate binding to both an ISS and antigen. Other examples of polymeric 25 platforms are dextran, polyacrylamide, ficoll, carboxymethylcellulose, polyvinyl alcohol, and poly D-glutamic acid/D-lysine.

The principles of using platform molecules are well understood in the art. Generally, a platform contains, or is derivatized to contain, appropriate binding sites for 30 ISS and antigen. In addition, or alternatively, ISS and/or antigen is derivatized to provide appropriate linkage groups. For example, a simple platform is a bi-functional linker (*i.e.*, has two binding sites), such as a peptide. Further examples are discussed below.

Platform molecules may be biologically stabilized, *i.e.*, they exhibit an *in vivo* excretion half-life often of hours to days to months to confer therapeutic efficacy, and are preferably composed of a synthetic single chain of defined composition. They generally have a molecular weight in the range of about 200 to about 1,000,000, preferably any of the
5 following ranges: from about 200 to about 500,000; from about 200 to about 200,000; from about 200 to about 50,000 (or less, such as 30,000). Examples of valency platform molecules are polymers (or are comprised of polymers) such as polyethylene glycol (PEG; preferably having a molecular weight of about 200 to about 8000), poly-D-lysine, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, D-glutamic acid and D-lysine (in a ratio of 3:2). Other
10 molecules that may be used are albumin and IgG.

Other platform molecules suitable for use within the present invention are the chemically-defined, non-polymeric valency platform molecules disclosed in U.S. patent 5,552,391. Other homogeneous chemically-defined valency platform molecules suitable for use within the present invention are derivatized 2,2'-ethylenedioxydiethylamine
15 (EDDA) and triethylene glycol (TEG).

Additional suitable valency platform molecules include, but are not limited to, tetraaminobenzene, heptaaminobetacyclodextrin, tetraaminopentaerythritol, 1,4,8,11-tetraazacyclotetradecane (Cyclam) and 1,4,7,10-tetraazacyclododecane (Cyclen).

In general, these platforms are made by standard chemical synthesis techniques.
20 PEG must be derivatized and made multivalent, which is accomplished using standard techniques. Some substances suitable for conjugate synthesis, such as PEG, albumin, and IgG are available commercially.

Conjugation of an ISS and antigen to a platform molecule may be effected in any number of ways, typically involving one or more crosslinking agents and functional groups
25 on the antigen and ISS platform and platform molecule. Platforms and ISS and antigen must have appropriate linking groups. Linking groups are added to platforms using standard synthetic chemistry techniques. Linking groups may be added to polypeptide antigens and ISS using either standard solid phase synthetic techniques or recombinant techniques. Recombinant approaches may require post-translational modification in order
30 to attach a linker, and such methods are known in the art.

As an example, polypeptides contain amino acid side chain moieties containing functional groups such as amino, carboxyl or sulphhydryl groups that serve as sites for

coupling the polypeptide to the platform. Residues that have such functional groups may be added to the polypeptide if the polypeptide does not already contain these groups. Such residues may be incorporated by solid phase synthesis techniques or recombinant techniques, both of which are well known in the peptide synthesis arts. When the 5 polypeptide has a carbohydrate side chain(s) (or if the antigen is a carbohydrate), functional amino, sulfhydryl and/or aldehyde groups may be incorporated therein by conventional chemistry. For instance, primary amino groups may be incorporated by reaction of the oxidized sugar with ethylenediamine in the presence of sodium cyanoborohydride, sulfhydryls may be introduced by reaction of cysteamine dihydrochloride followed by reduction with a standard disulfide reducing agent, while aldehyde groups may be 10 generated following periodate oxidation. In a similar fashion, the platform molecule may also be derivatized to contain functional groups if it does not already possess appropriate functional groups.

Hydrophilic linkers of variable lengths are useful for connecting ISS and antigen to 15 platform molecules. Suitable linkers include linear oligomers or polymers of ethylene glycol. Such linkers include linkers with the formula
$$R^1S(CH_2CH_2O)_nCH_2CH_2O(CH_2)_mCO_2R^2$$
 wherein n = 0-200, m = 1 or 2, R¹ = H or a protecting group such as trityl, R² = H or alkyl or aryl, e.g., 4-nitrophenyl ester. These linkers are useful in connecting a molecule containing a thiol reactive group such as 20 haloaceyl, maleiamide, etc., via a thioether to a second molecule which contains an amino group via an amide bond. These linkers are flexible with regard to the order of attachment, i.e., the thioether can be formed first or last.

In embodiments in which an ISS and antigen are proximately associated by 25 adsorption onto a surface, the surface may be in the form of a carrier particle (for example, a nanoparticle) made with either an inorganic or organic core. Examples of such nanoparticles include, but are not limited to, nanocrystalline particles, nanoparticles made by the polymerization of alkylcyanoacrylates and nanoparticles made by the polymerization of methylidene malonate. Additional surfaces to which an ISS and antigen may be adsorbed include, but are not limited to, activated carbon particles and protein-ceramic 30 nanoplates. Other examples of carrier particles are provided herein.

Absorption of polynucleotides and polypeptides to a surface for the purpose of delivery of the adsorbed molecules to cells is well known in the art. See, for example,

Douglas et al. (1987) *Crit. Rev. Ther. Drug. Carrier Syst.* 3:233-261; Hagiwara et al. (1987) *In Vivo* 1:241-252; Bousquet et al. (1999) *Pharm. Res.* 16:141-147; and Kossovsky et al., U.S. Patent 5,460,831. Preferably, the material comprising the adsorbent surface is biodegradable. Adsorption of an ISS and/or antigen to a surface may occur through non-covalent interactions, including ionic and/or hydrophobic interactions.

In general, characteristics of carriers such as nanoparticles, such as surface charge, particle size and molecular weight, depend upon polymerization conditions, monomer concentration and the presence of stabilizers during the polymerization process (Douglas et al., 1987). The surface of carrier particles may be modified, for example, with a surface coating, to allow or enhance adsorption of the ISS and/or antigen. Carrier particles with adsorbed ISS and/or antigen may be further coated with other substances. The addition of such other substances may, for example, prolong the half-life of the particles once administered to the subject and/or may target the particles to a specific cell type or tissue, as described herein.

Nanocrystalline surfaces to which an ISS and antigen may be adsorbed have been described (see, for example, U.S. Patent 5,460,831). Nanocrystalline core particles (with diameters of 1 μm or less) are coated with a surface energy modifying layer that promotes adsorption of polypeptides, polynucleotides and/or other pharmaceutical agents. As described in U.S. Patent 5,460,831, for example, a core particle is coated with a surface that promotes adsorption of an oligonucleotide and is subsequently coated with an antigen preparation, for example, in the form of a lipid-antigen mixture. Such nanoparticles are self-assembling complexes of nanometer sized particles, typically on the order of 0.1 μm , that carry an inner layer of ISS and an outer layer of antigen.

Another adsorbent surface are nanoparticles made by the polymerization of alkylcyanoacrylates. Alkylcyanoacrylates can be polymerized in acidified aqueous media by a process of anionic polymerization. Depending on the polymerization conditions, the small particles tend to have sizes in the range of 20 to 3000 nm, and it is possible to make nanoparticles specific surface characteristics and with specific surface charges (Douglas et al., 1987). For example, oligonucleotides may be adsorbed to polyisobutyl- and polyisohexylcyanoacrylate nanoparticles in the presence of hydrophobic cations such as tetraphenylphosphonium chloride or quaternary ammonium salts, such as cetyltrimethyl ammonium bromide. Oligonucleotide adsorption on these nanoparticles appears to be

mediated by the formation of ion pairs between negatively charged phosphate groups of the nucleic acid chain and the hydrophobic cations. See, for example, Lambert et al. (1998) *Biochimie* 80:969-976, Chavany et al. (1994) *Pharm. Res.* 11:1370-1378; Chavany et al. (1992) *Pharm. Res.* 9:441-449. Polypeptides may also be adsorbed to 5 polyalkylcyanoacrylate nanoparticles. See, for example, Douglas et al., 1987; Schroeder et al. (1998) *Peptides* 19:777-780.

Another adsorbent surface are nanoparticles made by the polymerization of methylidene malonate. For example, as described in Bousquet et al., 1999, polypeptides adsorbed to poly(methylidene malonate 2.1.2) nanoparticles appear to do so initially through electrostatic forces followed by stabilization through hydrophobic forces. 10

IMP/MC complexes

ISS-containing polynucleotides may be administered in the form of immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier (IMP/MC) complexes. Accordingly, the 15 invention provides compositions comprising IMP/MC complexes.

Microcarriers useful in the invention are less than about 150, 120 or 100 μm in size, more commonly less than about 50-60 μm in size, preferably less than about 10 μm in size, and are insoluble in pure water. Microcarriers used in the invention are preferably biodegradable, although nonbiodegradable microcarriers are acceptable. Microcarriers are 20 commonly solid phase, such as "beads" or other particles, although liquid phase microcarriers such as oil in water emulsions comprising a biodegradable polymers or oils are also contemplated. A wide variety of biodegradable and nonbiodegradable materials acceptable for use as microcarriers are known in the art.

Microcarriers for use in the compositions or methods of the invention are generally less than about 10 μm in size (*e.g.*, have an average diameter of less than about 10 μm , or at least about 97% of the particles pass through a 10 μm screen filter), and include 25 nanocarriers (*i.e.*, carriers of less than about 1 μm size). Preferably, microcarriers are selected having sizes within an upper limit of about 9, 7, 5, 2, or 1 μm or 900, 800, 700, 600, 500, 400, 300, 250, 200, or 100 nm and an independently selected lower limit of about 30 4, 2, or 1 μm or about 800, 600, 500, 400, 300, 250, 200, 150, 100, 50, 25, or 10 nm, where the lower limit is less than the upper limit. In some embodiments, the microcarriers

have a size of about 1.0-1.5 μm , about 1.0-2.0 μm or about 0.9-1.6 μm . In certain preferred embodiments, the microcarriers have a size of about 10 nm to about 5 μm or about 25 nm to about 4.5 μm , about 1 μm , about 1.2 μm , about 1.4 μm , about 1.5 μm , about 1.6 μm , about 1.8 μm , about 2.0 μm , about 2.5 μm or about 4.5 μm . When the microcarriers are nanocarriers, preferred embodiments include nanocarriers of about 25 to about 300 nm, 50 to about 200 nm, about 50 nm or about 200 nm.

Solid phase biodegradable microcarriers may be manufactured from biodegradable polymers including, but not limited to: biodegradable polyesters, such as poly(lactic acid), poly(glycolic acid), and copolymers (including block copolymers) thereof, as well as block copolymers of poly(lactic acid) and poly(ethylene glycol); polyorthoesters such as polymers based on 3,9-diethylidene-2,4,8,10-tetraoxaspiro[5.5]undecane (DETOSU); polyanhydrides such as poly(anhydride) polymers based on relatively hydrophilic monomers such as sebacic acid; polyanhydride imides, such as polyanhydride polymers based on sebacic acid-derived monomers incorporating amino acids (*i.e.*, linked to sebacic acid by imide bonds through the amino-terminal nitrogen) such as glycine or alanine; polyanhydride esters; polyphosphazenes, especially poly(phosphazenes) which contain hydrolysis-sensitive ester groups which can catalyze degradation of the polymer backbone through generation of carboxylic acid groups (Schacht et al., (1996) *Biotechnol. Bioeng.* 1996:102); and polyamides such as poly(lactic acid-*co*-lysine).

A wide variety of nonbiodegradable materials suitable for manufacturing microcarriers are also known, including, but not limited to polystyrene, polypropylene, polyethylene, latex, gold, and ferromagnetic or paramagnetic materials. Certain embodiments exclude gold, latex, and/or magnetic beads. In certain embodiments, the microcarriers may be made of a first material (*e.g.*, a magnetic material) encapsulated with a second material (*e.g.*, polystyrene).

Solid phase microspheres are prepared using techniques known in the art. For example, they can be prepared by emulsion-solvent extraction/evaporation technique. Generally, in this technique, biodegradable polymers such as polyanhydrides, poly(alkyl- α -cyanoacrylates) and poly(α -hydroxy esters), for example, poly(lactic acid), poly(glycolic acid), poly(D,L-lactic-*co*-glycolic acid) and poly(caprolactone), are dissolved in a suitable organic solvent, such as methylene chloride, to constitute the dispersed phase (DP) of emulsion. DP is emulsified by high-speed homogenization into excess volume of aqueous

continuous phase (CP) that contains a dissolved surfactant, for example, polyvinylalcohol (PVA) or polyvinylpirrolidone (PVP). Surfactant in CP is to ensure the formation of discrete and suitably-sized emulsion droplet. The organic solvent is then extracted into the CP and subsequently evaporated by raising the system temperature. The solid 5 microparticles are then separated by centrifugation or filtration, and dried, for example, by lyophilization or application of vacuum, before storing at 4 °C.

Physico-chemical characteristics such as mean size, size distribution and surface charge of dried microspheres may be determined. Size characteristics are determined, for example, by dynamic light scattering technique and the surface charge was determined by 10 measuring the zeta potential.

Liquid phase microcarriers include liposomes, micelles, oil droplets and other lipid or oil-based particles which incorporate biodegradable polymers or oils. In certain embodiments, the biodegradable polymer is a surfactant. In other embodiments, the liquid phase microcarriers are biodegradable due to the inclusion of a biodegradable oil such as 15 squalene or a vegetable oil. One preferred liquid phase microcarrier is oil droplets within an oil-in-water emulsion. Preferably, oil-in-water emulsions used as microcarriers comprise biodegradable substituents such as squalene.

IMP/MC complexes comprise an IMP bound to the surface of a microcarrier (*i.e.*, the IMP is not encapsulated in the MC), and preferably comprise multiple molecules of 20 IMP bound to each microcarrier. In certain embodiments, a mixture of different IMPs may be complexed with a microcarrier, such that the microcarrier is bound to more than one IMP species. The bond between the IMP and MC may be covalent or non-covalent. As will be understood by one of skill in the art, the IMP may be modified or derivatized and the composition of the microcarrier may be selected and/or modified to accommodate the 25 desired type of binding desired for IMP/MC complex formation.

Covalently bonded IMP/MC complexes may be linked using any covalent crosslinking technology known in the art. Typically, the IMP portion will be modified, either to incorporate an additional moiety (*e.g.*, a free amine, carboxyl or sulphhydryl group) or incorporate modified (*e.g.*, phosphorothioate) nucleotide bases to provide a site at which 30 the IMP portion may be linked to the microcarrier. The link between the IMP and MC portions of the complex can be made at the 3' or 5' end of the IMP, or at a suitably modified base at an internal position in the IMP. The microcarrier is generally also

modified to incorporate moieties through which a covalent link may be formed, although functional groups normally present on the microcarrier may also be utilized. The IMP/MC is formed by incubating the IMP with a microcarrier under conditions which permit the formation of a covalent complex (e.g., in the presence of a crosslinking agent or by use of an activated microcarrier comprising an activated moiety which will form a covalent bond with the IMP).

A wide variety of crosslinking technologies are known in the art, and include crosslinkers reactive with amino, carboxyl and sulphydryl groups. As will be apparent to one of skill in the art, the selection of a crosslinking agent and crosslinking protocol will depend on the configuration of the IMP and the microcarrier as well as the desired final configuration of the IMP/MC complex. The crosslinker may be either homobifunctional or heterobifunctional. When a homobifunctional crosslinker is used, the crosslinker exploits the same moiety on the IMP and MC (e.g., an aldehyde crosslinker may be used to covalently link an IMP and MC where both the IMP and MC comprise one or more free amines). Heterobifunctional crosslinkers utilize different moieties on the IMP and MC, (e.g., a maleimido-N-hydroxysuccinimide ester may be used to covalently link a free sulphydryl on the IMP and a free amine on the MC), and are preferred to minimize formation of inter-microcarrier bonds. In most cases, it is preferable to crosslink through a first crosslinking moiety on the microcarrier and a second crosslinking moiety on the IMP, where the second crosslinking moiety is not present on the microcarrier. One preferred method of producing the IMP/MC complex is by 'activating' the microcarrier by incubating with a heterobifunctional crosslinking agent, then forming the IMP/MC complex by incubating the IMP and activated MC under conditions appropriate for reaction. The crosslinker may incorporate a "spacer" arm between the reactive moieties, or the two reactive moieties in the crosslinker may be directly linked.

In one preferred embodiment, the IMP portion comprises at least one free sulphydryl (e.g., provided by a 5'-thiol modified base or linker) for crosslinking to the microcarrier, while the microcarrier comprises free amine groups. A heterobifunctional crosslinker reactive with these two groups (e.g., a crosslinker comprising a maleimide group and a NHS-ester), such as succinimidyl 4-(N-maleimidomethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate is used to activate the MC, then covalently crosslink the IMP to form the IMP/MC complex.

Non-covalent IMP/MC complexes may be linked by any non-covalent binding or interaction, including ionic (electrostatic) bonds, hydrophobic interactions, hydrogen bonds, van der Waals attractions, or a combination of two or more different interactions, as is normally the case when a binding pair is to link the IMP and MC.

5 Preferred non-covalent IMP/MC complexes are typically complexed by hydrophobic or electrostatic (ionic) interactions, or a combination thereof, (e.g., through base pairing between an IMP and a polynucleotide bound to an MC use of a binding pair). Due to the hydrophilic nature of the backbone of polynucleotides, IMP/MC complexes which rely on hydrophobic interactions to form the complex generally require modification 10 of the IMP portion of the complex to incorporate a highly hydrophobic moiety. Preferably, the hydrophobic moiety is biocompatible, nonimmunogenic, and is naturally occurring in the individual for whom the composition is intended (e.g., is found in mammals, particularly humans). Examples of preferred hydrophobic moieties include lipids, steroids, sterols such as cholesterol, and terpenes. The method of linking the hydrophobic moiety to 15 the IMP will, of course, depend on the configuration of the IMP and the identity of the hydrophobic moiety. The hydrophobic moiety may be added at any convenient site in the IMP, preferably at either the 5' or 3' end; in the case of addition of a cholesterol moiety to an IMP, the cholesterol moiety is preferably added to the 5' end of the IMP, using conventional chemical reactions (see, for example, Godard et al. (1995) *Eur. J. Biochem.* 232:404-410). Preferably, microcarriers for use in IMP/MC complexes linked by 20 hydrophobic bonding are made from hydrophobic materials, such as oil droplets or hydrophobic polymers, although hydrophilic materials modified to incorporate hydrophobic moieties may be utilized as well. When the microcarrier is a liposome or other liquid phase microcarrier comprising a lumen, the IMP/MC complex is formed by 25 mixing the IMP and the MC after preparation of the MC, in order to avoid encapsulation of the IMP during the MC preparation process.

Non-covalent IMP/MC complexes bound by electrostatic binding typically exploit the highly negative charge of the polynucleotide backbone. Accordingly, microcarriers for use in non-covalently bound IMP/MC complexes are generally positively charged 30 (cationic) at physiological pH (e.g., about pH 6.8-7.4). The microcarrier may intrinsically possess a positive charge, but microcarriers made from compounds not normally possessing a positive charge may be derivatized or otherwise modified to become positively charged

(cationic). For example, the polymer used to make the microcarrier may be derivatized to add positively charged groups, such as primary amines. Alternately, positively charged compounds may be incorporated in the formulation of the microcarrier during manufacture (e.g., positively charged surfactants may be used during the manufacture of poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid) copolymers to confer a positive charge on the resulting microcarrier particles).

As described herein, to prepare cationic microspheres, cationic lipids or polymers, for example, 1,2-dioleoyl-1,2,3-trimethylammoniopropane (DOTAP), cetyltrimethylammonium bromide (CTAB) or polylysine, are added either to DP or CP, as per their solubility in these phases.

As described herein, IMP/MC complexes can be preformed by adsorption onto cationic microspheres by incubation of polynucleotide and the particles, preferably in an aqueous admixture. Such incubation may be carried out under any desired conditions, including ambient (room) temperature (e.g., approximately 20 °C) or under refrigeration (e.g., 4 °C). Because cationic microspheres and polynucleotides associate relatively quickly, the incubation may be for any convenient time period, such as 5, 10, 15 minutes or more, including overnight and longer incubations. For example, polynucleotides containing ISS can be adsorbed onto the cationic microspheres by overnight aqueous incubation of polynucleotide and the particles at 4 °C. However, because cationic microspheres and polynucleotides spontaneously associate, the IMP/MC complex can be formed by simple co-administration of the polynucleotide and the MC. Microspheres may be characterized for size and surface charge before and after polynucleotide association. Selected batches may then evaluated for activity against suitable controls in, for example, established human peripheral blood mononuclear cell (PBMC), as described herein, and mouse splenocyte assays. The formulations may also evaluated in suitable animal models.

Non-covalent IMP/MC complexes linked by nucleotide base pairing may be produced using conventional methodologies. Generally, base-paired IMP/MC complexes are produced using a microcarrier comprising a bound, preferably a covalently bound, polynucleotide (the “capture polynucleotide”) that is at least partially complementary to the IMP. The segment of complementarity between the IMP and the capture nucleotide is preferably at least 6, 8, 10 or 15 contiguous base pairs, more preferably at least 20

contiguous base pairs. The capture nucleotide may be bound to the MC by any method known in the art, and is preferably covalently bound to the IMP at the 5' or 3' end.

In other embodiments, a binding pair may be used to link the IMP and MC in an IMP/MC complex. The binding pair may be a receptor and ligand, an antibody and antigen (or epitope), or any other binding pair which binds at high affinity (*e.g.*, K_d less than about 10⁻⁸). One type of preferred binding pair is biotin and streptavidin or biotin and avidin, which form very tight complexes. When using a binding pair to mediate IMP/MC complex binding, the IMP is derivatized, typically by a covalent linkage, with one member of the binding pair, and the MC is derivatized with the other member of the binding pair. Mixture of the two derivatized compounds results in IMP/MC complex formation.

Many IMP/MC complex embodiments do not include an antigen, and certain embodiments exclude antigen(s) associated with the disease or disorder which is the object of the IMP/MC complex therapy. In further embodiments, the IMP is also bound to one or more antigen molecules. Antigen may be coupled with the IMP portion of an IMP/MC complex in a variety of ways, including covalent and/or non-covalent interactions, as described, for example, in WO 98/16247. Alternately, the antigen may be linked to the microcarrier. The link between the antigen and the IMP in IMP/MC complexes comprising an antigen bound to the IMP can be made by techniques described herein and known in the art, including, but not limited to, direct covalent linkage, covalent conjugation via a crosslinker moiety (which may include a spacer arm), noncovalent conjugation via a specific binding pair (*e.g.*, biotin and avidin), and noncovalent conjugation via electrostatic or hydrophobic bonding.

25 *Methods of the invention*

The invention provides methods of modulating an immune response in an individual, preferably a mammal, more preferably a human, comprising administering to the individual an ISS-containing polynucleotide as described herein. Immunomodulation may include stimulating a Th1-type immune response and/or inhibiting or reducing a Th2-type immune response. The ISS-containing polynucleotide is administered in an amount sufficient to modulate an immune response. As described herein, modulation of an

immune response may be humoral and/or cellular, and is measured using standard techniques in the art and as described herein.

A number of individuals are suitable for receiving the immunomodulatory polynucleotide(s) described herein. Preferably, but not necessarily, the individual is 5 human.

In certain embodiments, the individual suffers from a disorder associated with a Th2-type immune response, such as allergies or allergy-induced asthma. Administration of an ISS-containing polynucleotide results in immunomodulation, increasing levels of one or more Th1-type response associated cytokines, which may result in a reduction of the Th2-type response features associated with the individual's response to the allergen.

10 Immunomodulation of individuals with Th2-type response associated disorders results in a reduction or improvement in one or more of the symptoms of the disorder. Where the disorder is allergy or allergy-induced asthma, improvement in one or more of the symptoms includes a reduction one or more of the following: rhinitis, allergic conjunctivitis, 15 circulating levels of IgE, circulating levels of histamine and/or requirement for 'rescue' inhaler therapy (e.g., inhaled albuterol administered by metered dose inhaler or nebulizer).

In further embodiments, the individual subject to the immunomodulatory therapy of the invention is an individual receiving a vaccine. The vaccine may be a prophylactic 20 vaccine or a therapeutic vaccine. A prophylactic vaccine comprises one or more epitopes associated with a disorder for which the individual may be at risk (e.g., *M. tuberculosis* antigens as a vaccine for prevention of tuberculosis). Therapeutic vaccines comprise one or more epitopes associated with a particular disorder affecting the individual, such as *M. tuberculosis* or *M. bovis* surface antigens in tuberculosis patients, antigens to which the individual is allergic (i.e., allergy desensitization therapy) in individuals subject to 25 allergies, tumor cells from an individual with cancer (e.g., as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,484,596), or tumor associated antigens in cancer patients. As shown in Example 3 below, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotides in conjunction with a hepatitis virus antigen, hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), resulted in increased titers of anti-HBsAg antibodies in primates as compared to administration of HBsAg alone.

The ISS-containing polynucleotide may be given in conjunction with the vaccine 30 (e.g., in the same injection or a contemporaneous, but separate, injection) or the ISS-containing polynucleotide may be administered separately (e.g., at least 12 hours before or

after administration of the vaccine). In certain embodiments, the antigen(s) of the vaccine is part of the ISS, by either covalent or non-covalent linkage to the ISS. Administration of immunomodulatory polynucleotide therapy to an individual receiving a vaccine results in an immune response to the vaccine that is shifted towards a Th1-type response as compared to individuals which receive vaccine without ISS-containing polynucleotide. Shifting 5 towards a Th1-type response may be recognized by a delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) response to the antigen(s) in the vaccine, increased IFN- γ and other Th1-type response associated cytokines, production of CTLs specific for the antigen(s) of the vaccine, low or reduced levels of IgE specific for the antigen(s) of the vaccine, a reduction in Th2- 10 associated antibodies specific for the antigen(s) of the vaccine, and/or an increase in Th1-associated antibodies specific for the antigen(s) of the vaccine. In the case of therapeutic vaccines, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide and vaccine results in amelioration of one or more symptoms of the disorder which the vaccine is intended to treat. As will be apparent to one of skill in the art, the exact symptom(s) and manner of 15 their improvement will depend on the disorder sought to be treated. For example, where the therapeutic vaccine is for tuberculosis, ISS-containing polynucleotide treatment with vaccine results in reduced coughing, pleural or chest wall pain, fever, and/or other symptoms known in the art. Where the vaccine is an allergen used in allergy desensitization therapy, the treatment results in a reduction in the symptoms of allergy 20 (e.g., reduction in rhinitis, allergic conjunctivitis, circulating levels of IgE, and/or circulating levels of histamine).

Other embodiments of the invention relate to immunomodulatory therapy of individuals having a pre-existing disease or disorder, such as cancer or an infectious disease. Cancer is an attractive target for immunomodulation because most cancers express 25 tumor-associated and/or tumor specific antigens which are not found on other cells in the body. Stimulation of a Th1-type response against tumor cells results in direct and/or bystander killing of tumor cells by the immune system, leading to a reduction in cancer cells and/or a reduction in symptom(s). Administration of an ISS-containing polynucleotide to an individual having cancer results in stimulation of a Th1-type immune 30 response against the tumor cells. Such an immune response can kill tumor cells, either by direct action of cellular immune system cells (e.g., CTLs) or components of the humoral immune system, or by bystander effects on cells proximal to cells targeted by the immune

system. See, for example, Cho et al. (2000) *Nat. Biotechnol.* 18:509-514. In the cancer context, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotides may further comprise administration of one or more additional therapeutic agents such as, for example, anti-tumor antibodies, chemotherapy regimens and/or radiation treatments. Anti-tumor antibodies, including, but not limited to anti-tumor antibody fragments and/or derivatives thereof, and monoclonal anti-tumor antibodies, fragments and/or derivatives thereof, are known in the art as is administration of such antibody reagents in cancer therapy (e.g., RITUXAN® (rituximab); HERCEPTIN® (trastuzumab)). Administration of one or more additional therapeutic agents may occur before, after and/or concurrent with administration of the ISS-containing polynucleotides.

Immunomodulatory therapy in accordance with the invention is also useful for individuals with infectious diseases, particularly infectious diseases which are resistant to humoral immune responses (e.g., diseases caused by mycobacterial infections and intracellular pathogens). Immunomodulatory therapy may be used for the treatment of infectious diseases caused by cellular pathogens (e.g., bacteria or protozoans) or by subcellular pathogens (e.g., viruses). ISS therapy may be administered to individuals suffering from mycobacterial diseases such as tuberculosis (e.g., *M. tuberculosis* and/or *M. bovis* infections), leprosy (i.e., *M. leprae* infections), or *M. marinum* or *M. ulcerans* infections. ISS therapy is also useful for the treatment of viral infections, including infections by influenza virus, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), hepatitis virus B, hepatitis virus C, herpes viruses, particularly herpes simplex viruses, and papilloma viruses. Diseases caused by intracellular parasites such as malaria (e.g., infection by *Plasmodium vivax*, *P. ovale*, *P. falciparum* and/or *P. malariae*), leishmaniasis (e.g., infection by *Leishmania donovani*, *L. tropica*, *L. mexicana*, *L. braziliensis*, *L. peruviana*, *L. infantum*, *L. chagasi*, and/or *L. aethiopica*), and toxoplasmosis (i.e., infection by *Toxoplasmosis gondii*) also benefit from ISS therapy. ISS therapy is also useful for treatment of parasitic diseases such as schistosomiasis (i.e., infection by blood flukes of the genus *Schistosoma* such as *S. haematobium*, *S. mansoni*, *S. japonicum*, and *S. mekongi*) and clonorchiasis (i.e., infection by *Clonorchis sinensis*). Administration of an ISS-containing polynucleotide to an individual suffering from an infectious disease results in an amelioration of symptoms of the infectious disease. In some embodiments, the infectious disease is not a viral disease.

The invention further provides methods of increasing or stimulating at least one Th1-associated cytokine in an individual, including IL-2, IL-12, TNF- β , IFN- γ and IFN- α . In certain embodiments, the invention provides methods of increasing or stimulating IFN- γ in an individual, particularly in an individual in need of increased IFN- γ levels, by 5 administering an effective amount of an ISS-containing polynucleotide to the individual such that IFN- γ is increased. Individuals in need of increased IFN- γ are those having disorders which generally respond to the administration of IFN- γ . Such disorders include a number of inflammatory disorders including, but not limited to, ulcerative colitis. Such disorders also include a number of fibrotic disorders, including, but not limited to, 10 idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis (IPF), scleroderma, cutaneous radiation-induced fibrosis, hepatic fibrosis including schistosomiasis-induced hepatic fibrosis, renal fibrosis as well as other conditions which may be improved by administration of IFN- γ . Administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide in accordance with the invention results in an increase in IFN- γ levels, and results in amelioration of one or more symptoms, stabilization of one or 15 more symptoms, and/or prevention or slowing of progression (e.g., reduction or elimination of additional lesions or symptoms) of the disorder which responds to IFN- γ .

The methods of the invention may be practiced in combination with other therapies which make up the standard of care for the disorder, such as administration of anti-inflammatory agents such as systemic corticosteroid therapy (e.g., cortisone) in IPF.

In certain embodiments, the invention provides methods of increasing IFN- α in an individual, particularly in an individual in need of increased IFN- α levels, by administering an effective amount of an ISS-containing polynucleotide to the individual such that IFN- α levels are increased. Individuals in need of increased IFN- α are those having disorders which generally respond to the administration of IFN- α , including recombinant IFN- α , 20 including, but not limited to, viral infections and cancer. In certain embodiments, immunomodulatory polynucleotides effective for inducing IFN- α production comprise one or more TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) in addition to the ISS, particularly at the 5' end of the ISS, as described herein. The additional TCG(s) and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G(s) may be immediately 5' and adjacent to the ISS or may be 5' to the ISS 25 with one or more bases separating the TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G from the ISS. In some embodiments, the additional TCG and/or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence(s) is 30

created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, 5'-bromocytosine to the 5' end of the ISS. In some embodiments where the additional TCG or T, 5'-bromocytosine, G sequence is created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, 5'-bromocytosine to the 5'end of the ISS, the additional sequence may create a TCGA or a T, 5'-bromocytosine, G, A sequence with the ISS.

5 Examples of immunomodulatory polynucleotides particularly effective for inducing IFN- α production include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID NO: 1, 14, 19, 46, 24, 11, 18, 35, 12, 13, 28 and 36.

10 Administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide in accordance with the invention results in an increase in IFN- α levels, and results in amelioration of one or more symptoms, stabilization of one or more symptoms, and/or prevention or slowing of progression (e.g., reduction or elimination of additional lesions or symptoms) of the disorder which responds to IFN- α . The methods of the invention may be practiced in combination with other therapies which make up the standard of care for the disorder, such as administration of 15 anti-viral agents for viral infections.

Also provided are methods of reducing levels, particularly serum levels, of IgE in an individual having an IgE-related disorder by administering an effective amount of an ISS-containing polynucleotide to the individual. In such methods, the immunomodulatory polynucleotide may be administered alone (e.g., without antigen) or administered with 20 antigen, such as an allergen. Reduction in IgE results in an amelioration of one or more symptoms of the IgE-related disorder. Such symptoms include allergy symptoms such as rhinitis, conjunctivitis, increased sensitivity to allergens, a reduction in the symptoms of allergy in an individual with allergies, or a reduction in severity of an allergic response. Accordingly, the invention also provides methods of treating an allergic condition in an 25 individual. In some embodiments, methods of treating an allergic condition include administering the immunomodulatory polynucleotide with a particular amount or dose of antigen. With any additional antigen administration, the amount or dose of antigen administered can remain the same, can decrease or can increase (as in conventional desensitization therapy) over the course of treatment.

30 In some embodiments, the invention provides methods of stimulating CTL production in an individual, particularly in an individual in need of increased number and/or activity of CTLs, comprising administering an effective amount of an ISS-

containing polynucleotide to the individual such that CTL production is increased. Individuals in need of increased CTL production are those having disorders which generally respond to CTL activity. Such disorders include, but not limited to, cancer and intracellular infections. Administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide in accordance with the invention results in an increase in CTL levels, and results in amelioration of one or more symptoms, stabilization of one or more symptoms, and/or prevention or slowing of progression (*e.g.*, reduction or elimination of additional lesions or symptoms) of the disorder which responds to CTL activity.

Methods of the invention include any embodiments described herein, such as administering ISS-containing polynucleotides in the form of immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier complex (with or without antigen, or with or without antigen over a course of administrations), or in proximate association with an antigen.

As will be apparent to one of skill in the art, the methods of the invention may be practiced in combination with other therapies for the particular indication for which the ISS-containing polynucleotide is administered. For example, ISS therapy may be administered in conjunction with anti-malarial drugs such as chloroquine for malaria patients, in conjunction with leishmanicidal drugs such as pentamidine and/or allopurinol for leishmaniasis patients, in conjunction with anti-mycobacterial drugs such as isoniazid, rifampin and/or ethambutol in tuberculosis patients, or in conjunction with allergen desensitization therapy for atopic (allergy) patients.

As described herein, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotides may further comprise administration of one or more additional immunotherapeutic agents (*i.e.*, an agent which acts via the immune system and/or is derived from the immune system) including, but not limited to, cytokine, adjuvants and antibodies (including, but not limited to, antibody fragments and/or derivatives and monoclonal antibodies, fragments and/or derivatives thereof). Examples of therapeutic antibodies include those used in the cancer context (*e.g.*, anti-tumor antibodies). Administration of such additional immunotherapeutic agents applies to all the methods described herein.

An ISS-containing polynucleotide may also be administered in conjunction with an adjuvant. Administration of an antigen with an ISS and an adjuvant leads to a potentiation of a immune response to the antigen and thus, can result in an enhanced immune response compared to that which results from a composition comprising the ISS and antigen alone.

Adjuvants are known in the art and include, but are not limited to, oil-in-water emulsions, water-in oil emulsions, alum (aluminum salts), liposomes and microparticles, including but not limited to, polystyrene, starch, polyphosphazene and polylactide/polyglycosides. Other suitable adjuvants also include, but are not limited to, MF59, DETOX™ (Ribi), squalene mixtures (SAF-1), muramyl peptide, saponin derivatives, mycobacterium cell wall preparations, monophosphoryl lipid A, mycolic acid derivatives, nonionic block copolymer surfactants, Quil A, cholera toxin B subunit, polyphosphazene and derivatives, and immunostimulating complexes (ISCOMs) such as those described by Takahashi et al. (1990) *Nature* 344:873-875, as well as, lipid-based adjuvants and others described herein.

For veterinary use and for production of antibodies in animals, mitogenic components of Freund's adjuvant (both complete and incomplete) can be used.

Administration and assessment of the immune response

The ISS-containing polynucleotide can be administered in combination with other pharmaceutical and/or immunogenic and/or immunostimulatory agents, as described herein, and can be combined with a physiologically acceptable carrier thereof (and as such the invention includes these compositions). The ISS-containing polynucleotide may be any of those described herein.

Accordingly, the ISS-containing polynucleotide can be administered in conjunction with other immunotherapeutic agents including, but not limited to, cytokine, adjuvants and antibodies.

As with all immunogenic compositions, the immunologically effective amounts and method of administration of the particular ISS-containing polynucleotide formulation can vary based on the individual, what condition is to be treated and other factors evident to one skilled in the art. Factors to be considered include the antigenicity of antigen if administered, whether or not the ISS-containing polynucleotide will be administered with or covalently attached to an adjuvant, delivery molecule and/or antigen, route of administration and the number of immunizing doses to be administered. Such factors are known in the art and it is well within the skill of those in the art to make such determinations without undue experimentation. A suitable dosage range is one that provides the desired modulation of immune response (e.g., stimulation of IFN- γ and/or IFN- α). When an immune response to an antigen is desired, a suitable dosage range is one

that provides the desired modulation of immune response to the antigen. Generally, dosage is determined by the amount of ISS-containing polynucleotide administered to the patient, rather than the overall quantity of ISS-containing composition administered. Useful dosage ranges of the ISS-containing polynucleotide, given in amounts of ISS-containing polynucleotide delivered, may be, for example, from about any of the following: 1 to 500 µg/kg, 100 to 400 µg/kg, 200 to 300 µg/kg, 1 to 100 µg/kg, 100 to 200 µg/kg, 300 to 400 µg/kg, 400 to 500 µg/kg. The absolute amount given to each patient depends on pharmacological properties such as bioavailability, clearance rate and route of administration.

The effective amount and method of administration of the particular ISS-containing polynucleotide formulation can vary based on the individual patient, desired result and/or type of disorder, the stage of the disease and other factors evident to one skilled in the art. The route(s) of administration useful in a particular application are apparent to one of skill in the art. Routes of administration include but are not limited to topical, dermal, transdermal, transmucosal, epidermal, parenteral, gastrointestinal, and naso-pharyngeal and pulmonary, including transbronchial and transalveolar. A suitable dosage range is one that provides sufficient ISS-containing composition to attain a tissue concentration of about 1-10 µM as measured by blood levels. The absolute amount given to each patient depends on pharmacological properties such as bioavailability, clearance rate and route of administration.

As described herein, APCs and tissues with high concentration of APCs are preferred targets for the ISS-containing polynucleotide. Thus, administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide to mammalian skin and/or mucosa, where APCs are present in relatively high concentration, is preferred.

The present invention provides ISS-containing polynucleotide formulations suitable for topical application including, but not limited to, physiologically acceptable implants, ointments, creams, rinses and gels. Topical administration is, for instance, by a dressing or bandage having dispersed therein a delivery system, by direct administration of a delivery system into incisions or open wounds, or by transdermal administration device directed at a site of interest. Creams, rinses, gels or ointments having dispersed therein an ISS-containing polynucleotide are suitable for use as topical ointments or wound filling agents.

Preferred routes of dermal administration are those which are least invasive. Preferred among these means are transdermal transmission, epidermal administration and subcutaneous injection. Of these means, epidermal administration is preferred for the greater concentrations of APCs expected to be in intradermal tissue.

5 Transdermal administration is accomplished by application of a cream, rinse, gel, etc. capable of allowing the ISS-containing polynucleotide to penetrate the skin and enter the blood stream. Compositions suitable for transdermal administration include, but are not limited to, pharmaceutically acceptable suspensions, oils, creams and ointments applied directly to the skin or incorporated into a protective carrier such as a transdermal device
10 (so-called "patch"). Examples of suitable creams, ointments etc. can be found, for instance, in the Physician's Desk Reference.

15 For transdermal transmission, iontophoresis is a suitable method. Iontophoretic transmission can be accomplished using commercially available patches which deliver their product continuously through unbroken skin for periods of several days or more. Use of this method allows for controlled transmission of pharmaceutical compositions in relatively great concentrations, permits infusion of combination drugs and allows for contemporaneous use of an absorption promoter.

20 An exemplary patch product for use in this method is the LECTRO PATCH trademarked product of General Medical Company of Los Angeles, CA. This product electronically maintains reservoir electrodes at neutral pH and can be adapted to provide dosages of differing concentrations, to dose continuously and/or periodically. Preparation and use of the patch should be performed according to the manufacturer's printed instructions which accompany the LECTRO PATCH product; those instructions are incorporated herein by this reference. Other occlusive patch systems are also suitable.
25

For transdermal transmission, low-frequency ultrasonic delivery is also a suitable method. Mitragotri et al. (1995) *Science* 269:850-853. Application of low-frequency ultrasonic frequencies (about 1 MHz) allows the general controlled delivery of therapeutic compositions, including those of high molecular weight.

30 Epidermal administration essentially involves mechanically or chemically irritating the outermost layer of the epidermis sufficiently to provoke an immune response to the irritant. Specifically, the irritation should be sufficient to attract APCs to the site of irritation.

An exemplary mechanical irritant means employs a multiplicity of very narrow diameter, short tines which can be used to irritate the skin and attract APCs to the site of irritation, to take up ISS transferred from the end of the tines. For example, the MONO-VACC old tuberculin test manufactured by Pasteur Merieux of Lyon, France contains a device suitable for introduction of immunomodulatory polynucleotide-containing compositions.

5

The device (which is distributed in the U.S. by Connaught Laboratories, Inc. of Swiftwater, PA) consists of a plastic container having a syringe plunger at one end and a tine disk at the other. The tine disk supports a multiplicity of narrow diameter tines of a length which will just scratch the outermost layer of epidermal cells. Each of the tines in the MONO-VACC kit is coated with old tuberculin; in the present invention, each needle is coated with a pharmaceutical composition of immunomodulatory polynucleotide formulation. Use of the device is preferably according to the manufacturer's written instructions included with the device product. Similar devices which can also be used in this embodiment are those which are currently used to perform allergy tests.

10

Another suitable approach to epidermal administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide is by use of a chemical which irritates the outermost cells of the epidermis, thus provoking a sufficient immune response to attract APCs to the area. An example is a keratinolytic agent, such as the salicylic acid used in the commercially available topical depilatory creme sold by Noxema Corporation under the trademark NAIR. This approach can also be used to achieve epithelial administration in the mucosa. The chemical irritant can also be applied in conjunction with the mechanical irritant (as, for example, would occur if the MONO-VACC type tine were also coated with the chemical irritant). The ISS-containing polynucleotide can be suspended in a carrier which also contains the chemical irritant or coadministered therewith.

15

20 Parenteral routes of administration include but are not limited to electrical (iontophoresis) or direct injection such as direct injection into a central venous line, intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intradermal, or subcutaneous injection. Formulations of ISS-containing polynucleotide suitable for parenteral administration are generally formulated in USP water or water for injection and may further comprise pH buffers, salts bulking agents, preservatives, and other pharmaceutically acceptable excipients. Immunomodulatory polynucleotide for parenteral injection may be formulated

25

30

in pharmaceutically acceptable sterile isotonic solutions such as saline and phosphate buffered saline for injection.

Gastrointestinal routes of administration include, but are not limited to, ingestion and rectal. The invention includes formulations ISS-containing polynucleotide suitable for 5 gastrointestinal administration including, but not limited to, pharmaceutically acceptable powders, pills or liquids for ingestion and suppositories for rectal administration. As will be apparent to one of skill in the art, pills or suppositories will further comprise pharmaceutically acceptable solids, such as starch, to provide bulk for the composition.

Naso-pharyngeal and pulmonary administration include are accomplished by 10 inhalation, and include delivery routes such as intranasal, transbronchial and transalveolar routes. The invention includes formulations of ISS-containing polynucleotide suitable for administration by inhalation including, but not limited to, liquid suspensions for forming aerosols as well as powder forms for dry powder inhalation delivery systems. Devices suitable for administration by inhalation of ISS formulations include, but are not limited to, 15 atomizers, vaporizers, nebulizers, and dry powder inhalation delivery devices.

As is well known in the art, solutions or suspensions used for the routes of 20 administration described herein can include any one or more of the following components: a sterile diluent such as water for injection, saline solution, fixed oils, polyethylene glycols, glycerine, propylene glycol or other synthetic solvents; antibacterial agents such as benzyl alcohol or methyl parabens; antioxidants such as ascorbic acid or sodium bisulfite; chelating agents such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid; buffers such as acetates, citrates or phosphates and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride or dextrose. pH can be adjusted with acids or bases, such as hydrochloric acid or sodium 25 hydroxide. The parenteral preparation can be enclosed in ampoules, disposable syringes or multiple dose vials made of glass or plastic.

As is well known in the art, pharmaceutical compositions suitable for injectable use include sterile aqueous solutions (where water soluble) or dispersions and sterile powders for the extemporaneous preparation of sterile injectable solutions or dispersion. For 30 intravenous administration, suitable carriers include physiological saline, bacteriostatic water, Cremophor EL™ (BASF, Parsippany, NJ) or phosphate buffered saline (PBS). In all cases, the composition must be sterile and should be fluid to the extent that easy syringability exists. It should be stable under the conditions of manufacture and storage

and must be preserved against the contaminating action of microorganisms such as bacteria and fungi. The carrier can be a solvent or dispersion medium containing, for example, water, ethanol, polyol (for example, glycerol, propylene glycol, and liquid polyethylene glycol, and the like), and suitable mixtures thereof. The proper fluidity can be maintained,
5 for example, by the use of a coating such as lecithin, by the maintenance of the required particle size in the case of dispersion and by the use of surfactants. Prevention of the action of microorganisms can be achieved by various antibacterial and antifungal agents, for example, parabens, chlorobutanol, phenol, ascorbic acid, thimerosal, and the like. It may be preferable to include isotonic agents, for example, sugars, polyalcohols such as
10 mannitol, sorbitol, sodium chloride in the composition. Prolonged absorption of the injectable compositions can be brought about by including in the composition an agent which delays absorption, for example, aluminum monostearate and gelatin.

As is well known in the art, sterile injectable solutions can be prepared by incorporating the active compound(s) in the required amount in an appropriate solvent with one or a combination of ingredients enumerated above, as required, followed by filtered sterilization. Generally, dispersions are prepared by incorporating the active compound into a sterile vehicle which contains a basic dispersion medium and the required other ingredients from those enumerated above. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, the preferred methods of preparation are vacuum drying and
15 freeze-drying which yields a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from a previously sterile-filtered solution thereof.

The choice of delivery routes can be used to modulate the immune response elicited. For example, IgG titers and CTL activities were identical when an influenza virus vector was administered via intramuscular or epidermal (gene gun) routes; however, the
20 muscular inoculation yielded primarily IgG2a, while the epidermal route yielded mostly IgG1. Pertmer et al. (1996) *J. Virol.* 70:6119-6125. Thus, one skilled in the art can take advantage of slight differences in immunogenicity elicited by different routes of administering the immunomodulatory polynucleotides of the present invention.

The above-mentioned compositions and methods of administration are meant to
25 describe but not limit the methods of administering the formulations of ISS-containing polynucleotides of the invention. The methods of producing the various compositions and devices are within the ability of one skilled in the art and are not described in detail here.

Analysis (both qualitative and quantitative) of the immune response to ISS can be by any method known in the art, including, but not limited to, measuring antigen-specific antibody production (including measuring specific antibody subclasses), activation of specific populations of lymphocytes such as CD4+ T cells, NK cells or CTLs, production of cytokines such as IFN- γ , IFN- α , IL-2, IL-4, IL-5, IL-10 or IL-12 and/or release of histamine. Methods for measuring specific antibody responses include enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and are well known in the art. Measurement of numbers of specific types of lymphocytes such as CD4+ T cells can be achieved, for example, with fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS). Cytotoxicity and CTL assays can be performed for instance as described in Raz et al. (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:9519-9523 and Cho et al. (2000). Cytokine concentrations can be measured, for example, by ELISA. These and other assays to evaluate the immune response to an immunogen are well known in the art. See, for example, Selected Methods in Cellular Immunology (1980) Mishell and Shiigi, eds., W.H. Freeman and Co.

Preferably, a Th1-type response is stimulated, *i.e.*, elicited and/or enhanced. With reference to the invention, stimulating a Th1-type immune response can be determined *in vitro* or *ex vivo* by measuring cytokine production from cells treated with ISS as compared to those treated without ISS. Methods to determine the cytokine production of cells include those methods described herein and any known in the art. The type of cytokines produced in response to ISS treatment indicate a Th1-type or a Th2-type biased immune response by the cells. As used herein, the term "Th1-type biased" cytokine production refers to the measurable increased production of cytokines associated with a Th1-type immune response in the presence of a stimulator as compared to production of such cytokines in the absence of stimulation. Examples of such Th1-type biased cytokines include, but are not limited to, IL-2, IL-12, IFN- γ and IFN- α . In contrast, "Th2-type biased cytokines" refers to those associated with a Th2-type immune response, and include, but are not limited to, IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13. Cells useful for the determination of ISS activity include cells of the immune system, primary cells isolated from a host and/or cell lines, preferably APCs and lymphocytes, even more preferably macrophages and T cells.

Stimulating a Th1-type immune response can also be measured in a host treated with an ISS-containing polynucleotide can be determined by any method known in the art including, but not limited to: (1) a reduction in levels of IL-4 or IL-5 measured before and

after antigen-challenge; or detection of lower (or even absent) levels of IL-4 or IL-5 in an ISS treated host, optionally as compared to an antigen-primed, or primed and challenged, control treated without ISS; (2) an increase in levels of IL-12, IL-18 and/or IFN (α , β or γ) before and after antigen challenge; or detection of higher levels of IL-12, IL-18 and/or IFN (α , β or γ) in an ISS treated host as compared to an antigen-primed or, primed and challenged, control treated without ISS; (3) "Th1-type biased" antibody production in an ISS treated host as compared to a control treated without ISS; and/or (4) a reduction in levels of antigen-specific IgE as measured before and after antigen challenge; or detection of lower (or even absent) levels of antigen-specific IgE in an ISS treated host as compared to an antigen-primed, or primed and challenged, control treated without ISS. A variety of these determinations can be made by measuring cytokines made by APCs and/or lymphocytes, preferably macrophages and/or T cells, *in vitro* or *ex vivo* using methods described herein or any known in the art. Some of these determinations can be made by measuring the class and/or subclass of antigen-specific antibodies using methods described herein or any known in the art.

The class and/or subclass of antigen-specific antibodies produced in response to ISS-containing polynucleotide treatment indicate a Th1-type or a Th2-type biased immune response by the cells. As used herein, the term "Th1-type biased" antibody production refers to the measurable increased production of antibodies associated with a Th1-type immune response (*i.e.*, Th1-associated antibodies). One or more Th1 associated antibodies may be measured. Examples of such Th1-type biased antibodies include, but are not limited to, human IgG1 and/or IgG3 (see, e.g., Widhe et al. (1998) *Scand. J. Immunol.* 47:575-581 and de Martino et al. (1999) *Ann. Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 83:160-164) and murine IgG2a. In contrast, "Th2-type biased antibodies" refers to those associated with a Th2-type immune response, and include, but are not limited to, human IgG2, IgG4 and/or IgE (see, e.g., Widhe et al. (1998) and de Martino et al. (1999)) and murine IgG1 and/or IgE.

The Th1-type biased cytokine induction which occurs as a result of administration of ISS-containing polynucleotide produces enhanced cellular immune responses, such as those performed by NK cells, cytotoxic killer cells, Th1 helper and memory cells. These responses are particularly beneficial for use in protective or therapeutic vaccination against

viruses, fungi, protozoan parasites, bacteria, allergic diseases and asthma, as well as tumors.

In some embodiments, a Th2 response is suppressed (reduced). Suppression of a Th2 response may be determined by, for example, reduction in levels of Th2-associated cytokines, such as IL-4 and IL-5, reduction in the levels of Th2-associated antibodies, as well as IgE reduction and reduction in histamine release in response to allergen.

Kits of the invention

The invention provides kits. In certain embodiments, the kits of the invention generally comprise one or more containers comprising any ISS-containing polynucleotide as described herein. The kits may further comprise a suitable set of instructions, generally written instructions, relating to the use of the ISS-containing polynucleotide for any of the methods described herein (e.g., immunomodulation, ameliorating one or more symptoms of an infectious disease, increasing IFN- γ levels, increasing IFN- α levels, or ameliorating an IgE-related disorder).

The kits may comprise ISS-containing polynucleotide packaged in any convenient, appropriate packaging. For example, if the ISS-containing polynucleotide is a dry formulation (e.g., freeze dried or a dry powder), a vial with a resilient stopper is normally used, so that the ISS-containing polynucleotide may be easily resuspended by injecting fluid through the resilient stopper. Ampoules with non-resilient, removable closures (e.g., sealed glass) or resilient stoppers are most conveniently used for liquid formulations of ISS-containing polynucleotide. Also contemplated are packages for use in combination with a specific device, such as an inhaler, nasal administration device (e.g., an atomizer) or an infusion device such as a minipump.

The instructions relating to the use of ISS-containing polynucleotide generally include information as to dosage, dosing schedule, and route of administration for the intended method of use. The containers of ISS-containing polynucleotide may be unit doses, bulk packages (e.g., multi-dose packages) or sub-unit doses. Instructions supplied in the kits of the invention are typically written instructions on a label or package insert (e.g., a paper sheet included in the kit), but machine-readable instructions (e.g., instructions carried on a magnetic or optical storage disk) are also acceptable.

In some embodiments, the kits further comprise an antigen (or one or more antigens), which may or may not be packaged in the same container (formulation) as the ISS-containing polynucleotide(s). Antigen have been described herein.

5 In certain embodiments, the kits of the invention comprise an ISS-containing polynucleotide in the form of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier complex (IMP/MC) and may further comprise a set of instructions, generally written instructions, relating to the use of the IMP/MC complex for any of the methods described herein (e.g., immunomodulation, ameliorating one or more symptoms of an infectious disease, increasing IFN- γ levels, increasing IFN- α levels, or ameliorating an IgE-related disorder).

10 In some embodiments, kits of the invention comprise materials for production of IMP/MC complex generally include separate containers of IMP and MC, although in certain embodiments materials for producing the MC are supplied rather than preformed MC. The IMP and MC are preferably supplied in a form which allows formation of IMP/MC complex upon mixing of the supplied IMP and MC. This configuration is preferred when the IMP/MC complex is linked by non-covalent bonding. This configuration is also preferred when the IMP and MC are to be crosslinked via a heterobifunctional crosslinker; either IMP or the MC is supplied in an "activated" form (e.g., linked to the heterobifunctional crosslinker such that a moiety reactive with the IMP is available).

15 20 Kits for IMP/MC complexes comprising a liquid phase MC preferably comprise one or more containers including materials for producing liquid phase MC. For example, an IMP/MC kit for oil-in-water emulsion MC may comprise one or more containers containing an oil phase and an aqueous phase. The contents of the container are emulsified to produce the MC, which may be then mixed with the IMP, preferably an IMP which has been modified to incorporate a hydrophobic moiety. Such materials include oil and water, for production of oil-in-water emulsions, or containers of lyophilized liposome components (e.g., a mixture of phospholipid, cholesterol and a surfactant) plus one or more containers of an aqueous phase (e.g., a pharmaceutically-acceptable aqueous buffer).

25 30 The following Examples are provided to illustrate, but not limit, the invention.

EXAMPLESExample 1: Immunomodulation of murine cells by ISS-containing polynucleotides

Immunomodulatory polynucleotides (*i.e.*, containing an ISS) or control polynucleotides (*i.e.*, without an ISS) were assayed for immunomodulatory activity on mouse splenocytes. The polynucleotides tested were fully modified phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides. Among the polynucleotides tested were 5'-TGACTGTGAACGTTCGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 59) (positive control) and 5'-TGACTGTGAACCTTAGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 60) (negative control).

Fragments of BALB/c mouse spleen were digested with collagenase/dispase (0.1 U/mL/0.8U/mL) dissolved in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) for 45 minutes at 37° C, then mechanically dispersed by forcing the digested fragments through metal screens. The dispersed splenocytes were pelleted by centrifugation, then resuspended in fresh medium (RPMI 1640 with 10% fetal calf serum, plus 50 units/mL penicillin, 50 µg/mL streptomycin, 2 mM glutamine, and 0.05 mM β-mercaptoethanol).

Mouse splenocytes were dispensed into wells of 96 well plates (7×10^7 cells/ml) and incubated for one hour at 37°C. 100 µL of 2x concentration test sample or control was added and the cells were incubated a further 24 hours. Medium was harvested from each well and tested for cytokine concentrations by ELISA. Polynucleotides were tested at various concentrations including 5.0, 1.0 and 0.1 µg/ml. Control samples included media alone and PANSORBIN® heat-killed, formalin-fixed *Staphylococcus aureus* (SAC) (CalBiochem).

IFN-γ was assayed using a sandwich-format ELISA. Medium from the mouse splenocyte assay was incubated in microtiter plates coated with anti-IFN-γ monoclonal antibody (Nunc). Bound IFN-γ was detected using a biotinylated anti-IFN-γ antibody and streptavidin-horseradish peroxidase conjugated secondary antibody, developed with the chromogenic peroxidase substrate 3,3',5,5'-tetramethylbenzidine (TMB) in the presence of peroxidase, and quantitated by measuring absorbance at 450 nm using a Emax precision microplate reader (Molecular Devices).

Immunomodulatory polynucleotides containing an ISS substantially increased IFN- γ secretion by mouse splenocytes compared to control polynucleotides. Tables 2-5 summarize assay results for IFN-γ produced in response to 5 µg/ml polynucleotide.

Table 2. Mouse splenocyte assays - IFN γ (pg/ml)

| test / control | Exp. 1 | Exp. 2 |
|----------------|--------|--------|
| SEQ ID NO: 59 | 164 | 1010 |
| SEQ ID NO: 60 | 18 | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 2 | 134 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 47 | 111 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 41 | 131 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 48 | | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 42 | | 623 |
| SEQ ID NO: 43 | | 794 |
| media | 18 | 3 |
| SAC | 4535 | 12719 |

Table 3. Mouse splenocyte assays - IFN γ (pg/ml)

| test / control | Exp. 3 | Exp. 4 |
|----------------|--------|--------|
| SEQ ID NO: 59 | 185 | 1090 |
| SEQ ID NO: 60 | 12 | 48 |
| SEQ ID NO: 33 | 140 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 8 | 26 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 9 | 12 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 10 | 12 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 12 | 341 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 13 | 12 | |
| SEQ ID NO: 1 | | 2045 |
| SEQ ID NO: 3 | | 1302 |
| SEQ ID NO: 4 | | 2002 |
| SEQ ID NO: 5 | | 1743 |
| SEQ ID NO: 6 | | 2832 |
| media | 12 | 48 |
| SAC | 2676 | 8753 |

Table 4. Mouse splenocyte assay - IFN γ (pg/ml)

| test / control | Exp. 5 |
|----------------|--------|
| SEQ ID NO: 59 | 1051 |
| SEQ ID NO: 60 | 48 |
| SEQ ID NO: 1 | 1335 |
| SEQ ID NO: 14 | 1119 |
| SEQ ID NO: 44 | 716 |
| SEQ ID NO: 17 | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 18 | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 45 | 274 |
| SEQ ID NO: 46 | 1251 |
| SEQ ID NO: 19 | 1467 |
| SEQ ID NO: 23 | 282 |
| SEQ ID NO: 24 | 1155 |
| SEQ ID NO: 25 | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 26 | 3 |
| SEQ ID NO: 27 | 11 |
| SEQ ID NO: 28 | 1331 |
| media | 3 |
| SAC | 924 |

5

Table 5. Mouse splenocyte assays - IFN γ (pg/ml)

| test / control | Exp. 6 | Exp. 7 |
|----------------|--------|--------|
| SEQ ID NO: 59 | 435 | 281 |
| SEQ ID NO: 60 | 9 | 18 |
| SEQ ID NO: 1 | 419 | 279 |
| SEQ ID NO: 11 | 149 | |

| | | |
|---------------|------|-----|
| SEQ ID NO: 44 | 222 | 342 |
| SEQ ID NO: 9 | | 9 |
| SEQ ID NO: 12 | | 540 |
| SEQ ID NO: 19 | | 625 |
| SEQ ID NO: 55 | | 486 |
| SEQ ID NO: 20 | | 458 |
| SEQ ID NO: 21 | | 9 |
| SEQ ID NO: 22 | | 709 |
| media | 9 | |
| SAC | 3215 | |

Example 2: Immunomodulation of human cells by ISS-containing polynucleotides

Immunomodulatory polynucleotides (*i.e.*, containing an ISS) or control samples, including polynucleotides without an ISS (5'-TGACTGTGAACCTTAGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 60) and 5'-TGACTGTGAAGGTTAGAGATGA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 61)), SAC and media alone, were tested for immunomodulatory activity on human peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs). The polynucleotides tested were fully modified phosphorothioate oligodeoxynucleotides.

Peripheral blood was collected from volunteers by venipuncture using heparinized syringes. Blood was layered onto FICOLL® (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) cushion and centrifuged. PBMCs, located at the FICOLL® interface, were collected, then washed twice with cold phosphate buffered saline (PBS). The cells were resuspended and cultured in 24 or 48 well plates at 2×10^6 cells/mL in RPMI 1640 with 10% heat-inactivated human AB serum plus 50 units/mL penicillin, 50 µg/mL streptomycin, 300 µg/mL glutamine, 1 mM sodium pyruvate, and 1 x MEM non-essential amino acids (NEAA).

The cells were cultured in the presence of test samples (immunomodulatory polynucleotides or controls) at 20 µg/ml for 24 hours, then cell-free medium was collected from each well and assayed for IFN-γ and IFN-α concentration. IFN-γ and IFN-α were assayed using CYTOSCREEN™ ELISA kits from BioSource International, Inc., according to the manufacturer's instructions.

ISS-containing polynucleotides stimulated IFN- γ and/or IFN- α secretion by human PBMCs. In the human PBMC assay, background levels of IFN- γ can vary, even significantly, with the donor. Other cytokines such as IFN- α , however, demonstrate a generally stable pattern of activation and routinely exhibit low background levels under unstimulated conditions. Examples of results from such assays from independent PBMC donors are summarized in Tables 6.

As indicated in Table 6, certain immunomodulatory polynucleotides are effective in boosting IFN- γ levels in human cells. Also as indicated in Table 6, certain immunomodulatory polynucleotides are particularly effective in boosting IFN- α levels in human cells. Such polynucleotides generally include those comprising at least one TCG or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence 5' to the ISS or at least one TCG or T, 5-bromocytosine, G sequence created by the addition of a T or a TC or a T, -5-bromocytosine to the 5' end of the ISS. Examples of such immunomodulatory polynucleotides include, but are not limited to, SEQ ID NOs: 1, 14, 19, 46, 24, 11, 18, 12, 13, 28 and 36.

5

10

15

Table 6. Human PBMC Assays - IFN (pg/ml)

| Experiment 1: | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 9 | Donor 94 | Donor 9 | Donor 94 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 20 | 30 | 131 | 274 |
| 60 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 29 | 19 | 100 | 171 |
| 47 | 39 | 30 | 235 | 341 |
| 41 | 25 | 27 | 89 | 257 |
| 48 | 24 | 24 | 108 | 157 |
| 42 | 10 | 13 | 24 | 48 |
| 43 | 15 | 17 | 102 | 170 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| SAC | 10 | 31 | 536 | 814 |
| Experiment 2: | | | | |
| test/control | Donor 45 | Donor 112 | Donor 45 | Donor 112 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 25 | 122 | 36 | 45 |
| 60 | 6 | 13 | 4 | 6 |
| 2 | 29 | 196 | 43 | 74 |
| 41 | 47 | 282 | 15 | 48 |

| | | | | |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 42 | 16 | 114 | 10 | 30 |
| 43 | 10 | 144 | 27 | 22 |
| 31 | 20 | 60 | 45 | 26 |
| 33 | 15 | 48 | 62 | 11 |
| 8 | 14 | 122 | 30 | 16 |
| 9 | 9 | 121 | 16 | 11 |
| 10 | 10 | 109 | 23 | 8 |
| 13 | 49 | 475 | 250 | 50 |
| 1 | 162 | 454 | 819 | 281 |
| 11 | 25 | 164 | 281 | 99 |
| 3 | 36 | 399 | 479 | 91 |
| 4 | 30 | 210 | 155 | 51 |
| 5 | 35 | 319 | 495 | 123 |
| 6 | 41 | 188 | 616 | 308 |
| 44 | 21 | 166 | 75 | 20 |
| 14 | 41 | 281 | 475 | 148 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 7 | 39 |
| SAC | 133 | 119 | 42 | 13 |

Table 6 (continued).

| Experiment 3: | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| test/control | Donor 7 | Donor 58 | Donor 7 | Donor 58 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN-γ | IFN-γ | IFN-α | IFN-α |
| 59 | 769 | 76 | 231 | 14 |
| 60 | 74 | 26 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 580 | 110 | 174 | 20 |
| 12 | 512 | 124 | 260 | 29 |
| 55 | 901 | 98 | 738 | 53 |
| 20 | 752 | 63 | 224 | 18 |
| 19 | 1907 | 218 | 734 | 137 |
| 23 | 1628 | 211 | 701 | 120 |
| 24 | 1719 | 326 | 1280 | 208 |
| 45 | 419 | 60 | 256 | 11 |
| 46 | 556 | 77 | 288 | 7 |
| 9 | 328 | 35 | 149 | 17 |
| 17 | 332 | 90 | 376 | 24 |
| 18 | 437 | 75 | 174 | 57 |
| 25 | 561 | 87 | 295 | 61 |
| 1 | 1273 | 236 | 759 | 136 |
| 33 | 488 | 53 | 328 | 15 |
| media | 119 | 0 | 0 | 18 |
| SAC | 977 | 158 | 1269 | 1036 |

| Experiment 4: | | | | |
|----------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| test/control | Donor 60 | Donor 65 | Donor 60 | Donor 65 |

| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 59 | 139 | 43 | 44 | 180 |
| 60 | 14 | 0 | 8 | 1 |
| 12 | 335 | 57 | 837 | 742 |
| 9 | 55 | 19 | 32 | 64 |
| 10 | 76 | 22 | 39 | 56 |
| 13 | 308 | 44 | 248 | 362 |
| 44 | 80 | 24 | 92 | 221 |
| 14 | 167 | 48 | 635 | 1425 |
| 11 | 205 | 50 | 1134 | 1184 |
| 1 | 410 | 92 | 1024 | 1320 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 11 | 1 |
| SAC | 197 | 124 | 285 | 1655 |

Table 6 (continued).

| Experiment 5: | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 113 | Donor 114 | Donor 113 | Donor 114 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 192 | 285 | 189 | 19 |
| 60 | 2 | 21 | 1 | 1 |
| 1 | 299 | 968 | 643 | 192 |
| 19 | 277 | 712 | 548 | 180 |
| 28 | 184 | 341 | 951 | 396 |
| 33 | 68 | 242 | 109 | 63 |
| 34 | 110 | 203 | 359 | 66 |
| 36 | 170 | 523 | 866 | 356 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 |
| SAC | 211 | 780 | 1493 | 997 |

| Experiment 6: | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 101 | Donor 125 | Donor 101 | Donor 125 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 19 | 207 | 93 | 0 |
| 60 | 0 | 126 | 0 | 0 |
| 44 | 8 | 91 | 230 | 6 |
| 2 | 8 | 249 | 87 | 0 |
| 12 | 38 | 101 | 181 | 0 |
| 45 | 8 | 72 | 91 | 0 |
| 46 | 18 | 174 | 136 | 0 |
| 55 | 35 | 289 | 1102 | 5 |
| 20 | 42 | 126 | 346 | 0 |
| 19 | 32 | 419 | 2999 | 70 |
| 23 | 27 | 115 | 376 | 0 |
| 24 | 45 | 465 | 4025 | 92 |
| 9 | 0 | 150 | 3 | 0 |

| | | | | |
|-------|----|-----|------|-----|
| 17 | 24 | 145 | 118 | 0 |
| 18 | 20 | 168 | 29 | 0 |
| 25 | 29 | 228 | 197 | 6 |
| 26 | 18 | 153 | 73 | 0 |
| 27 | 24 | 171 | 346 | 34 |
| 28 | 23 | 298 | 2361 | 108 |
| 1 | 93 | 369 | 1524 | 24 |
| media | 0 | 9 | 0 | 0 |
| SAC | 11 | 39 | 0 | 0 |

Table 6 (continued).

Experiment 7:

| test/control | Donor 98 | Donor 123 | Donor 98 | Donor 123 |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 0 | 21 | 7 | 1 |
| 60 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 8 |
| 44 | 0 | 4 | 0 | 14 |
| 12 | 4 | 46 | 9 | 47 |
| 19 | 25 | 139 | 22 | 337 |
| 23 | 0 | 34 | 2 | 68 |
| 24 | 13 | 107 | 30 | 1074 |
| 9 | 0 | 10 | 1 | 7 |
| 18 | 0 | 34 | 14 | 49 |
| 25 | 1 | 21 | 7 | 59 |
| 26 | 0 | 19 | 3 | 31 |
| 27 | 0 | 51 | 15 | 98 |
| 28 | 3 | 37 | 18 | 153 |
| 1 | 103 | 121 | 11 | 217 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 2 | 1 |
| SAC | 3 | 16 | 51 | 265 |

Experiment 8:

| test/control | Donor 106 | Donor 107 | Donor 106 | Donor 107 |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 72 | 218 | 173 | 224 |
| 60 | 14 | 3 | 0 | 0 |
| 33 | 76 | 231 | 430 | 165 |
| 8 | 54 | 193 | 374 | 129 |
| 9 | 43 | 183 | 179 | 144 |
| 10 | 36 | 122 | 183 | 62 |
| 12 | 54 | 379 | 727 | 2866 |
| 13 | 58 | 264 | 425 | 1853 |
| 1 | 124 | 485 | 1670 | 2534 |
| media | 4 | 2 | 0 | 0 |
| SAC | 120 | 342 | 4000 | 1275 |

Table 6 (continued).

| Experiment 9: | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 56 | Donor 82 | Donor 56 | Donor 82 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 69 | 30 | 87 | 276 |
| 60 | 5 | 5 | 0 | 0 |
| 33 | 62 | 30 | 124 | 151 |
| 8 | 76 | 25 | 79 | 71 |
| 9 | 52 | 16 | 40 | 7 |
| 10 | 28 | 20 | 13 | 32 |
| 12 | 89 | 42 | 226 | 684 |
| 13 | 76 | 37 | 168 | 688 |
| 1 | 82 | 62 | 802 | 3851 |
| media | 2 | 4 | 0 | 0 |
| SAC | 112 | 1432 | 2520 | 4000 |

| Experiment 10: | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 41 | Donor 45 | Donor 41 | Donor 45 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 0 | 16 | 43 | 363 |
| 60 | 20 | 11 | 16 | 19 |
| 44 | 0 | 7 | 30 | 195 |
| 2 | 0 | 5 | 20 | 164 |
| 47 | 0 | 7 | 32 | 146 |
| 41 | 0 | 9 | 30 | 124 |
| 42 | 0 | 4 | 23 | 44 |
| 43 | 7 | 10 | 43 | 199 |
| 1 | 16 | 31 | 498 | 2726 |
| media | 0 | 0 | 18 | 25 |
| SAC | 624 | 233 | 16931 | 35036 |

Table 6 (continued).

| Experiment 11: | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 99 | Donor 100 | Donor 99 | Donor 100 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 37 | 4 | 519 | 57 |
| 60 | 144 | 27 | 22 | 27 |
| 2 | 23 | 5 | 306 | 76 |
| 47 | 39 | 3 | 235 | 39 |
| 41 | 23 | 1 | 219 | 34 |
| 48 | 32 | 1 | 838 | 53 |
| 42 | 58 | 3 | 342 | 92 |
| 43 | 23 | 0 | 662 | 62 |
| 1 | 61 | 17 | 3680 | 404 |
| media | 0 | 20 | 15 | 60 |
| SAC | 849 | 177 | 3446 | 6230 |

| Experiment 12: | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 83 | Donor 103 | Donor 83 | Donor 103 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 308 | 16 | 250 | 8 |
| 60 | 49 | 160 | 0 | 0 |
| 61 | 10 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 1 | 820 | 109 | 928 | 219 |
| 3 | 625 | 130 | 554 | 71 |
| 4 | 546 | 111 | 188 | 25 |
| 5 | 444 | 158 | 385 | 47 |
| 6 | 276 | 64 | 906 | 160 |
| 2 | 255 | 75 | 347 | 21 |
| 31 | 501 | 11 | 301 | 6 |
| media | 0 | 693 | 3 | 0 |
| SAC | 1471 | 590 | 456 | 515 |

Table 6 (continued).

| Experiment 13: | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 26 | Donor 97 | Donor 26 | Donor 97 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 324 | 541 | 267 | 24 |
| 60 | 6 | 103 | 0 | 1 |
| 12 | 530 | 516 | 949 | 350 |
| 45 | 303 | 214 | 377 | 20 |
| 46 | 536 | 696 | 1274 | 142 |
| 9 | 208 | 301 | 153 | 12 |
| 17 | 515 | 586 | 1628 | 158 |
| 18 | 435 | 238 | 1572 | 64 |
| 1 | 1045 | 879 | 4302 | 1039 |
| 11 | 284 | 163 | 3424 | 299 |
| 44 | 391 | 465 | 2059 | 666 |
| 14 | 414 | 395 | 5172 | 1334 |
| 19 | 638 | 466 | 5874 | 2485 |
| media | 0 | 24 | 0 | 1 |
| SAC | 274 | | 102 | |

| Experiment 14: | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| test/control | Donor 97 | Donor 124 | Donor 97 | Donor 124 |
| SEQ ID NO: | IFN- γ | IFN- γ | IFN- α | IFN- α |
| 59 | 218 | 104 | 76 | 24 |
| 60 | 4 | 18 | 0 | 0 |
| 18 | 206 | 50 | 104 | 22 |
| 35 | 279 | 117 | 219 | 27 |
| media | 0 | 2 | 0 | 3 |
| SAC | 298 | 301 | 1170 | 784 |

Example 3: Primate immune response to antigen + ISS

Immune responses to administration of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) in the presence of an ISS-containing polynucleotide of the invention were examined in baboons.

HBsAg was recombinant HBsAg produced in yeast. Groups of baboons (five animals per group) included male and female baboons with weights ranging from 8-31 kg (group mean weights at 13-16 kg) at the start of the study.

The baboons were immunized three times, at two month intervals (0, 2 and 4 months), by intramuscular injection (IM) with 20 µg HBsAg in a 1 ml volume. As outlined below, some of the groups also received ISS with the HBsAg.

Bleeds on all animals were collected prior to immunization and at 2 weeks post-immunization. Anti-HBsAg IgG titers were measured as follows. Baboon serum samples were analyzed by AUSAB EIA commercial kit (Abbott Labs Cat. # 9006-24 and 1459-05) using human plasma derived HBsAg coated beads. Samples were tested along with a panel of human plasma derived HBsAg positive and negative standards ranging from 0-150 mIU/ml. Biotin conjugated HBsAg and rabbit anti-biotin-HRP conjugated antibody was used as the secondary antibody complex used for detection. The assay was developed with ortho-phenylenediamine (OPD) and the absorbance values were determined at 492 nm with background subtraction at 600 nm (Quantum II spectrophotometer, Abbott Labs). Using the specimen absorbance value the corresponding concentration of anti-HBsAg is expressed in milli-international units per ml (mIU/ml) as determined from the standard curve according to parameters established by the manufacturer. For diluted specimens, quantitation was based on the specimen absorbance that resulted in a value between 0-150 mIU/ml, multiplying by the dilution factor to arrive at the final concentration.

Statistical analysis was done with log transformed data by analysis of variance (NCSS97 Statistical Software program, Kaysville, UT) using One-Way ANOVA Planned Comparison ($\alpha = 0.05$). $p \leq 0.05$ was considered significant.

The animal groups tested were immunized as follows:

Group 1 - 20 µg HBsAg;

Group 2 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 59 (ISS);

Group 3 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 60 (non-ISS);

Group 4 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 38 (ISS);

Group 5 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 2 (ISS);

Group 6 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 18 (ISS);

Group 7 - 20 µg HBsAg + 1000 µg SEQ ID NO: 35 (ISS);

5 Results from the study are shown in Table 7 below. Administration of oligonucleotides containing an ISS sequence in conjunction with HBsAg resulted in increased titers of anti-HBsAg antibodies as compared to administration of HBsAg alone or to administration of HBsAg with a non-ISS oligonucleotide. In a pairwise comparison, the immune response detected in Group 2 (ISS oligonucleotide) was significantly different
10 from that detected in Group 3 (non-ISS oligonucleotide) ($p<0.05$ post-first immunization, $p=0.06$ post-third immunization). In pairwise comparisons with Group 2, significant differences in the immune responses were not found between that of Group 2 and that found with the other groups receiving an ISS oligonucleotide (Group 4, Group 5, Group 6 and Group 7).

15

Table 7. Anti-HBsAg in bleed samples after immunization

| | | Post-First Immunization | | Post-second Immunization | | Post-Third Immunization | |
|-------------------------------------|----|-------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-----------|
| Group | # | mIU/ml | Mean ± SD | mIU/ml | Mean ± SD | mIU/ml | Mean ± SD |
| 1 HBsAg | 1 | 0 | 59 | 0 | 806 | 0 | 4245 |
| | 2 | 135 | ± 58 | died | ± 1229 | died | ± 5673 |
| | 3 | 59 | | 613 | | 12,075 | |
| | 4 | 6 | | 2598 | | 4773 | |
| | 5 | 94 | | 12 | | 131 | |
| 2 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 59 | 6 | 9 | 108 | 357 | 2181 | 1273 | 14,773* |
| | 7 | 0 | ± 216 | 1829 | ± 3526 | 6186 | ± 15,522 |
| | 8 | 28 | | 158 | | 11,304 | |
| | 9 | 495 | | 8366 | | 41,138 | |
| | 10 | 11 | | 195 | | 13,966 | |
| 3 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 60 | 11 | 1 | 1** | 2133 | 524 | 23,744 | 5529 |
| | 12 | 0 | ± 1 | 21 | ± 903 | 5 | ± 10,235 |
| | 13 | 3 | | 202 | | 520 | |
| | 14 | 0 | | 85 | | 647 | |
| | 15 | 0 | | 178 | | 2732 | |
| 4 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 38 | 16 | 29 | 25 | 333 | 1546 | 4893 | 12,346** |
| | 17 | 50 | ± 23 | 3281 | ± 1131 | 15,363 | ± 6728 |
| | 18 | 43 | | 1556 | | 22,069 | |
| | 19 | 4 | | 781 | | 7716 | |
| | 20 | 0 | | 1779 | | 11,690 | |
| 5 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 2 | 21 | 8 | 26 | 6256 | 4556 | 50,538 | 27,726 |
| | 22 | 116 | ± 51 | 16,043 | ± 6943 | 84,681 | ± 38,365 |
| | 23 | 1 | | 280 | | 750 | |
| | 24 | 0 | | 107 | | 316 | |
| | 25 | 4 | | 93 | | 2346 | |
| 6 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 18 | 26 | 21 | 58 | 563 | 2804** | 24,100 | 36,904** |
| | 27 | 4 | ± 93 | 169 | ± 2515 | 280 | ± 35,121 |
| | 28 | 3 | | 6319 | | 23,981 | |
| | 29 | 39 | | 3318 | | 93,750 | |
| | 30 | 221 | | 3652 | | 42413 | |
| 7 HBsAg + SEQ ID NO: 35 | 31 | 5 | 3** | 14,190 | 3411 | 3336 | 13,647 |
| | 32 | 4 | ± 2 | 438 | ± 6059 | 6926 | ± 14,392 |
| | 33 | 3 | | 4 | | 193 | |
| | 34 | 0 | | 687 | | 24,938 | |
| | 35 | 1 | | 1735 | | 32,844 | |

Pairwise comparison to HBsAg alone (group 1) ** p<0.05; * p=0.05

Example 4: Preparation of biodegradable, cationic microspheres

5 Cationic poly(lactic acid, glycolic acid) (PLGA) microspheres were prepared as follows. 0.875 g of poly (D,L-lactide-co-glycolide) 50:50 polymer with an intrinsic

viscosity of 0.41 dl/g (0.1%, chloroform, 25 °C) was dissolved in 7.875 g of methylene chloride at 10% w/w concentration, along with 0.3 g of DOTAP. The clear organic phase was then emulsified into 500 ml of polyvinyl alcohol (PVA) aqueous solution (0.35% w/v) by homogenization at 4000 rpm for 30 minutes at room temperature using a laboratory mixer (Silverson L4R, Silverson Instruments). System temperature was then raised to 40 °C by circulating hot water through the jacket of the mixing vessel. Simultaneously, the stirring rate was reduced to 1500 rpm, and these conditions were maintained for 2 hours to extract and evaporate methylene chloride. The microsphere suspension was allowed to cool down to room temperature with the help of circulating cold water.

10 Microparticles were separated by centrifugation at 8000 rpm for 10 minutes at room temperature (Beckman Instruments) and resuspended in deionized water by gentle bath sonication. The centrifugal wash was repeated two additional times to remove excess PVA from the particle surface. Final centrifugal pellets of particles were suspended in approximately 10 ml of water, and lyophilized overnight. Dried cationic microsphere powder was characterized for size and surface charge: mean size (number weighted, μ) = 1.4; zeta potential (mV) = 32.4.

15

Example 5: Immunomodulation with IMP/MC complexes in human cells

20 Polynucleotides were tested for immunomodulatory activity alone and complexed with cationic PLGA microspheres (cPLGA) in the human PBMC assay. The human PBMC assay was performed as described in Example 2. Cationic PLGA microspheres were prepared as described in Example 4. Polynucleotides were tested as single agents, or in combination with cPLGA microspheres. The polynucleotides tested were SEQ ID NOS: 59, 60, 1, and 132. All polynucleotides contained 100% phosphorothioate linkages and were tested at a concentration of 20 μ g/ml. The cPLGA was added at a concentration of 100 μ g/ml. When the polynucleotides were tested with cPLGA, the polynucleotide and cPLGA were premixed for 15 min. at room temperature and then added to the culture. SAC (PANSORBIN® CalBiochem, 1/5000 dilution) and IMP (ISS-containing), SEQ ID NO: 59, were used as positive controls, and control polynucleotide, SEQ ID NO: 60, and cells alone were used as negative controls. Cationic PLGA was also tested alone. SAC contains *Staph. Aureus* (Cowan I) cell material. Samples were assayed in four healthy donors per assay.

25

30

As shown in Table 8 below, polynucleotides containing ISS (IMPs), SEQ ID NOs: 59, 1, and 132, were able to induce IFN- γ and IFN- α when used alone. Complexation of these IMPs with cPLGA cationic microcarriers (cat MC) significantly enhanced the induction of both cytokines. The control polynucleotide, SEQ ID NO: 60 did not induce either IFN- γ or IFN- α when used alone or when complexed with cPLGA.

5

TABLE 8

| Sample | IFN- γ (pg/ml) | | | | | IFN- α (pg/ml) | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|
| | Ex 1 | Ex 2 | Ex 3 | Ex 4 | mean | Ex 1 | Ex 2 | Ex 3 | Ex 4 | mean |
| SEQ ID NO:59 | 324 | 1036 | 529 | 653 | 636 | 9 | 43 | 22 | 108 | 43 |
| SEQ ID NO:60 | 430 | 19 | 48 | 35 | 34 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 54 | 15 |
| SEQ ID NO:1 | 287 | 278 | 2679 | 1057 | 1075 | 230 | 268 | 295 | 798 | 398 |
| cat MC | 9 | 5 | 59 | 72 | 36 | 7 | 0 | 98 | 112 | 54 |
| SEQ ID NO:59/cat MC | 601 | 358 | 1474 | 1941 | 1093 | 115 | 116 | 515 | 1298 | 511 |
| SEQ ID NO:60/cat MC | 13 | 13 | 46 | 65 | 34 | 5 | 0 | 0 | 43 | 12 |
| SEQ ID NO:1/cat MC | 1645 | 770 | 3322 | 3355 | 2273 | 1896 | 1078 | 2691 | 1728 | 1848 |
| cells alone | 11 | 4 | 0 | 13 | 7 | 8 | 2 | 3 | 64 | 19 |

10

Table 8 (continued).

| Sample | IFN- γ (pg/ml) | | | | | IFN- α (pg/ml) | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|-----------------------|------|------|------|------|
| | Ex 1 | Ex 2 | Ex 3 | Ex 4 | mean | Ex 1 | Ex 2 | Ex 3 | Ex 4 | mean |
| SEQ ID NO:59 | 1508 | 344 | 144 | 104 | 525 | 50 | 172 | 234 | 72 | 132 |
| SEQ ID NO:60 | 124 | 24 | 16 | 40 | 51 | 2 | 32 | 474 | 2 | 128 |
| SEQ ID NO:132 | 2928 | 936 | 380 | 108 | 1088 | 4968 | 72 | 1290 | 1182 | 1878 |
| cat MC | 32 | 8 | 72 | 120 | 58 | 10 | 2 | 60 | 92 | 41 |
| SEQ ID NO:59/cat MC | 1640 | 968 | 960 | 2300 | 1467 | 948 | 260 | 1298 | 1470 | 994 |
| SEQ ID NO:60/cat MC | 72 | 16 | 32 | 316 | 109 | 14 | 14 | 22 | 2 | 13 |
| SEQ ID NO:132/cat MC | 1060 | 4584 | 5172 | 1188 | 3001 | 5292 | 1050 | 3772 | 3214 | 3332 |
| cells alone | 44 | 24 | 20 | 28 | 29 | 20 | 200 | 2 | 2 | 56 |

15

Although the foregoing invention has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity and understanding, it will be apparent to

those skilled in the art that certain changes and modifications may be practiced. Therefore, descriptions and examples should not be construed as limiting the scope of the invention, which is delineated by the appended claims.

CLAIMS

What is claimed is:

1. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprising an immunostimulatory sequence (ISS), wherein the ISS comprises the formula:

5 5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ C G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 62)

wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z, wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine;

wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U;

wherein X₃ is T, A or C;

10 wherein X₄ is T, G or U; and

wherein the ISS is not 5'-TGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 63) or 5'-
GGAACGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 64).

2. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1, wherein the ISS is selected from the group consisting of TGAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 67), TGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 68), TGATCGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 69), TGATCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 70), TGAACGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 71), GTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 72), GTATCGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 73), GTACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 74), GAACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 75), ZGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 76), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine, CGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 77), CGACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 78), ZGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 79), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine, TTAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 82), TUAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 81) and TTAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 80).

3. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 2, wherein the ISS is selected from the group consisting of TGAACGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 67), GAACCGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 75) and CGAACGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 77).

4. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 3 comprising a sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 1, SEQ ID NO: 2, SEQ ID NO: 18, SEQ ID NO: 19 and SEQ ID NO: 132.

5. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide comprising an immunostimulatory sequence (ISS), wherein the ISS comprises the formula:

5'-X₁ X₂ A X₃ Z G X₄ T C G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 65)

wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine;

5 wherein X₁ is T, G, C or Z, wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine;

wherein X₂ is T, G, A or U;

wherein X₃ is T, A or C;

wherein X₄ is T, G or U; and

10 wherein the ISS is not 5'-TGAAZGTTCG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 66), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine.

6. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 5, wherein the ISS is selected from the group consisting of TGAAZGUTCG, (SEQ ID NO: 83) TGACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 84), TGATZGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 85), GTATZGGTCG (SEQ ID NO: 86),
15 GTACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 87), GAACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 88), GAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 89), ZGACZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 90), CGAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 91), ZGAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 92), ZGAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 93), TTAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 94), TUAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 95) and TTAAAZGTTCG (SEQ ID NO: 96), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine.

20

7. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 6, wherein the ISS is selected from the group consisting of ZGAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 93) and GAAAAZGUTCG (SEQ ID NO: 89), wherein Z is 5-bromocytosine.

25

8. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 7 comprising a sequence selected from the group consisting of SEQ ID NO: 35 and SEQ ID NO: 36.

9. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5, wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide further comprises at least one TCG sequence.

30

10. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 9, wherein the TCG sequence is adjacent to the 5' end of the ISS.

11. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide further comprises a TCGA sequence.

5 12. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide further comprises at least one T, 5-
bromocytosine, G sequence.

10 13. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 12, wherein the T, 5-
bromocytosine, G sequence is adjacent to the 5' end of the ISS.

14. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide further comprises a T, 5-bromocytosine, G,
A sequence.

15 15. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is less than about 150 bases or base pairs in
length.

20 16. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is less than about 100 bases or base pairs in
length.

25 17. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is less than about 50 bases or base pairs in
length.

18. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is single-stranded.

30 19. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5,
wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is double-stranded.

20. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5, wherein the immunomodulatory polynucleotide is stabilized.

5 21. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 20, wherein the polynucleotide comprises a phosphorothioate bond.

22. An immunomodulatory composition comprising an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5.

10 23. An immunomodulatory composition according to claim 22 further comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

15 24. An immunomodulatory composition according to claim 22 further comprising an antigen.

25 25. An immunomodulatory composition according to claim 24 further comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

20 26. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier (IMP/MC) complex, comprising:

a polynucleotide according to claim 1 linked to a biodegradable microcarrier (MC), wherein said MC is less than 10 µm in size.

25 27. An immunomodulatory polynucleotide/microcarrier (IMP/MC) complex, comprising:

a polynucleotide according to claim 5 linked to a biodegradable microcarrier (MC), wherein said MC is less than 10 µm in size.

30 28. A method of modulating an immune response in an individual comprising administering to an individual an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5 in an amount sufficient to modulate an immune response in said individual.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein said individual suffers from a disorder associated with a Th2-type immune response.

5 30. The method of claim 29, wherein said disorder associated with a Th2-type immune response is an allergy or asthma.

 31. The method of claim 28, wherein said individual has an infectious disease.

10 32. A method of increasing interferon-gamma (IFN- γ) in an individual, comprising: administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5 to said individual in an amount sufficient to increase IFN- γ in said individual.

15 33. The method of claim 32, wherein said individual has idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis.

 34. A method of increasing interferon-alpha (IFN- α) in an individual, comprising: administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or claim 5 to said individual in an amount sufficient to increase IFN- α in said individual.

20 35. The method of claim 34, wherein said individual has a viral infection.

 36. A method of increasing interferon-alpha (IFN- α) in an individual, comprising: administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 9 to said individual in an amount sufficient to increase IFN- α in said individual.

25 37. The method of claim 35, wherein said individual has a viral infection.

 38. A method of increasing interferon-alpha (IFN- α) in an individual, comprising: administering an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 11 to said individual in an amount sufficient to increase IFN- α in said individual.

39. The method of claim 38, wherein said individual has a viral infection.

40. A method of ameliorating a symptom of an infectious disease in an individual,
5 comprising:

administering an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide
according to claim 1 or claim 5 to the individual, wherein an effective amount is an amount
sufficient to ameliorate a symptom of said infectious disease.

10 41. The method of claim 40, wherein said infectious disease is an infectious disease
caused by a cellular pathogen.

42. The method of claim 41, wherein said infectious disease caused by a cellular
pathogen is selected from the group consisting of mycobacterial disease, malaria ,
15 leishmaniasis, toxoplasmosis, schistosomiasis and clonorchiasis.

43. A method of ameliorating a symptom of an IgE-related disorder in an
individual, comprising:

20 administering an effective amount of an immunomodulatory polynucleotide
according to claim 1 or claim 5 to an individual having an IgE-related disorder, wherein an
effective amount is an amount sufficient to ameliorate a symptom of said IgE-related
disorder.

44. The method of claim 43, wherein said IgE-related disorder is allergy.

25 45. The method of claim 43, wherein said IgE-related disorder is an allergy-related
disorder.

46. The method of claim 43, wherein said IgE-related disorder is asthma.

30 47. A kit comprising an immunomodulatory polynucleotide according to claim 1 or
claim 5.

48. The kit of claim 47, further comprising instructions for use of the immunomodulatory polynucleotide for immunodulation of an individual.